This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

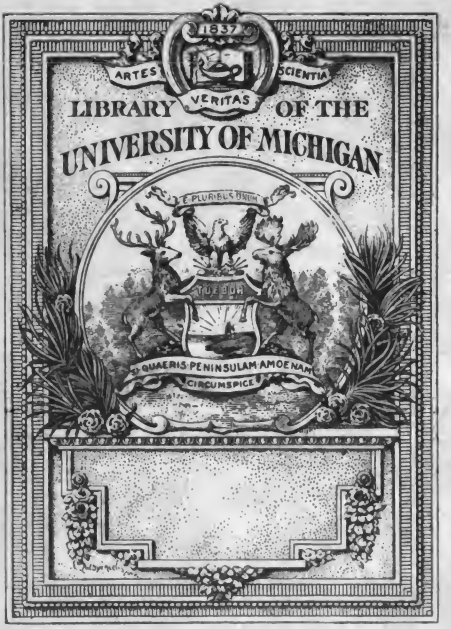
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/

Infantry drill regulations

United States. Army

Digitized by Google



THE GIFT OF

Mr. J. B. Moore.

Digitized by Google

APPENDIX TO INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS, 1911.

WAR DEPARTMENT,
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF,
Washington, December 2, 1911.

Paragraphs 747, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, and 798, Infantry Drill Regulations, 1911, apply only to troops equipped with the Infantry Equipment, model 1910. For troops equipped under General Orders, No. 23, War Department, 1906, and orders amendatory thereof, the alternative paragraphs published herewith will govern.

By order of the Secretary of War:

LEONARD WOOD,
Major General, Chief of Staff.

---

747. If the inspection is to include an examination of the blanket rolls the captain, before dismissing the company and after inpecting the file closers, directs the lieutenants to remain in place, closes ranks, stacks arms, dresses the company back to four paces from the stacks, takes intervals, and commands: 1. ***Unsling,*** 2. ***PACKS,*** 3. ***Open,*** 4. ***PACKS.***

At the second command each man unslings his roll and places it on the ground at his feet, rounded end to the front, square end of shelter half to the right.

At the fourth command the rolls are untied, laid perpendicular to the front with the triangular end of the shelter half to the front, opened, and unrolled to the left; each man prepares the contents of his roll for inspection and resumes the attention.

The captain then returns saber, passes along the ranks and file closers as before, inspects the rolls, returns to the right, draws saber and commands: 1. ***Close,*** 2. ***PACKS.***

Digitized by Google

At the second command each man, with his shelter half smoothly spread on the ground with buttons up and triangular end to the front, folds his blanket once across its length and places it upon the shelter half, fold toward the bottom, edge one-half inch from the square end, the same amount of canvas uncovered at the top and bottom. He then places the parts of the pole on the side of the blanket next the square end of shelter half, near and parallel to the fold, end of pole about 6 inches from the edge of the blanket; nests the pins similarly near the opposite edge of the blanket and distributes the other articles carried in the roll; folds the triangular end and then the exposed portion of the bottom of the shelter half over the blanket.

The two men in each file roll and fasten first the roll of the front and then of the rear rank man. The file closers work similarly two and two, or with the front rank man of a blank file. Each pair stands on the folded side, rolls the blanket roll closely and buckles the straps, passing the end of the strap through both keeper and buckle, back over the buckle and under the keeper. With the roll so lying on the ground that the edge of the shelter half can just be seen when looking vertically downward one end is bent upward and over to meet the other, a clove hitch is taken with the guy rope first around the end to which it is attached and then around the other end, adjusting the length of rope between hitches to suit the wearer.

As soon as a file completes its two rolls each man places his roll in the position it was in after being unslung and stands at attention.

All the rolls being completed, the captain commands: 1. *Sling*, 2. *PACKS*.

At the second command the rolls are slung, the end containing the pole to the rear.

The company is assembled, takes arms, and the captain completes the inspection as before.

792. Being in line or in column of platoons, the captain causes the company to stack arms, dresses it back to four paces from the stacks, and commands: *FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS*.

The officers, first sergeant, and guides fall out; the cooks [illegible] rank of the [illegible] the kitchen, the

Digitized by Google

taken from the front rank; the remaining guide or guides, and file closers form on a convenient flank.

793. The captain then causes the company to take intervals as described in the School of the Squad, and commands: ***PITCH TENTS.***

At the command ***Pitch tents*** all unsling and open the blanket rolls and take out the shelter half, poles, and pins; the front rank man places one pin in the ground at the point where his right heel, kept in position until this time, was planted. Each then spreads his shelter half, triangle to the rear, flat upon the ground the tent is to occupy, rear rank man's half on the right. The halves are then buttoned together. Each front rank man joins his pole, inserts the top in the eyes of the halves, and holds the pole upright beside the pin placed in the ground; his rear rank man, using the pins in front, pins down the front corners of the tent on the line of pins, stretching the canvas taut; he then inserts a pin in the eye of the rope and drives the pin at such distance in front of the pole as to hold the rope taut. Both then go to the rear of the tent; the rear rank man adjusts the pole and the front rank man drives the pins. The rest of the pins are then driven by both men, the rear rank man working on the right.

As soon as the tent is pitched each man arranges the contents of the blanket roll in the tent and stands at attention in front of his own half on line with the front guy rope pin.

The guy ropes, to have a uniform slope when the shelter tents are pitched, should all be of the same length.

794. When the blanket roll is not carried, arms are stacked and intervals taken as described above; the position of the front pole is marked with a bayonet and equipments are laid aside. The men then proceed to the wagon, secure their rolls, return to their places, and pitch tents as heretofore described.

795. To pitch double shelter tent, the captain gives the same commands as before, except ***Take half interval*** is given instead of ***Take interval.*** In taking interval each man follows the preceding man at 2 paces. The captain then commands: ***PITCH DOUBLE TENTS.***

The first sergeant places himself on the right of the guide and with him pitches a single shelter tent.

Digitized by Google

Only the odd numbers of the front rank mark the line wi
the tent pin.

The tent is formed by buttoning together the square ends
two single tents. Two complete tents, except one pole, are use
Two guy ropes are used at each end, the guy pins being place
in front of the corner pins.

The tents are pitched by numbers 1 and 2, front and rea
rank; and by numbers 3 and 4, front and rear rank; the me
falling in on the left are numbered, counting off if necessary

All the men spread their shelter halves on the ground th
tent is to occupy. Those of the front rank are placed with th
triangular ends to the front. All four halves are then buttoned
together, first the ridges and then the square ends. The front
corners of the tent are pinned by the front-rank men, the odd
number holding the poles, the even number driving the pins.
The rear-rank men similarly pin the rear corners.

While the odd numbers steady the poles, each even number of
the front rank takes his pole and enters the tent, where, assisted
by the even number of the rear rank, he adjusts the pole to the
center eyes of the shelter halves in the following order: (1) The
lower half of the front tent; (2) the lower half of the rear
tent; (3) the upper half of the front tent; (4) the upper half
of the rear tent. The guy ropes are then adjusted.

The tents having been pitched, the triangular ends are turned
back, contents of the rolls arranged, and the men stand at
attention, each opposite his own shelter half and facing out from
the tent.

796. Omitted.

797. Omitted.

798. Arms having been stacked, the men fall out and, at the
command ***Attention*** or the signal ***Attention to orders,*** stand in
front of their tents. The captain commands: ***STRIKE TENTS.***

The pins are removed, the tents are lowered, blanket rolls
packed and slung, and the men stand at attention in front and
rear of the places lately occupied by their tents at their original
places after extension.

Digitized by Google

APPENDIX

TO

INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS, 1911.

WAR DEPARTMENT,
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF,
Washington, December 2, 1911.

The Infantry Drill Regulations, 1911, have been prepared for the use of troops armed with the United States magazine rifle, model 1903. For the guidance of organizations armed with the United States magazine rifle, model 1898, the following alternative paragraphs are published and will be considered as substitute paragraphs for the corresponding paragraphs in the text: 75 (in part), 96, 98, 99, 134, 139, 141, 142, 148, and 150.

By order of the Secretary of War:

LEONARD WOOD,
Major General, Chief of Staff.

75. * * *

Third. The cut-off is kept turned down, except when using the magazine.

* * * * * * *

96. Being at order arms: 1. ***Unfix, BAYONET.***

If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the belt: Take the position of parade rest, grasp the handle of the bayonet firmly with the right hand, press the spring with the forefinger of the left hand, raise the bayonet until the handle is about 6 inches above the muzzle of the piece, drop the point to the left, back of hand toward the body, and, glancing at the scabbard, return the bayonet, the blade passing between the left arm and body; regrasp the piece with the right hand and resume the

Digitized by Google

If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the haversack: Take the bayonet from the rifle with the left hand and return it to the scabbard in the most convenient manner.

If marching or lying down, the bayonet is fixed and unfixed in the most expeditious and convenient manner and the piece returned to the original position.

Fix and unfix bayonet are executed with promptness and regularity, but not in cadence.

98. Being at order arms: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS.***

At the second command, take the position of port arms. ***(TWO)*** With the right hand open the magazine gate, turn the bolt handle up, draw the bolt back and glance at the magazine and chamber. Having found them empty, or having emptied them, raise the head and eyes to the front.

99. Being at inspection arms: 1. ***Order (Right shoulder, port),*** 2. ***ARMS.***

At the preparatory command, push the bolt forward, turn the handle down, close the magazine gate, pull the trigger, and resume port arms. At the command ***arms,*** complete the movement ordered.

134. Pieces being loaded and in the position of load, to execute other movements with the pieces loaded: 1. ***Lock,*** 2. ***PIECES.***

At the command ***Pieces*** turn the safety lock fully to the right.

The safety lock is said to be at the "ready" when turned to the left, and at the "safe" when turned to the right.

The cut-off is said to be "on" when turned up and "off" when turned down.

139. Being in line or skirmish line at halt: 1. ***With dummy (blank or ball) cartridges,*** 2. ***LOAD.***

At the command ***load*** each front-rank man or skirmisher faces half right and carries the right foot to the right, about one foot, to such position as will insure the greatest firmness and steadiness of the body; raises or lowers the piece and drops it into the left hand at the balance, left thumb extended along the stock, muzzle at the height of the breast. With the right hand he turns and draws the bolt back, takes a cartridge between the thumb and first two fingers and places it in the receiver; places palm of the hand against the back of the bolt handle; thrusts the bolt home with a quick motion, turning down the handle, and carries the hand to the small of the stock. Each

Digitized by Google

rear-rank man moves to the right front, takes a similar position opposite the interval to the right of his front-rank man, muzzle of the piece extending beyond the front rank, and loads.

A skirmish line may load while moving, the pieces being held as nearly as practicable in the position of load.

If kneeling or sitting the position of the piece is similar; if kneeling the left forearm rests on the left thigh; if sitting the elbows are supported by the knees. If lying down the left hand steadies and supports the piece at the balance, the toe of the butt resting on the ground, the muzzle off the ground.

For reference, these positions (standing, kneeling, and lying down) are designated as that of *load*.

141. *FILL MAGAZINE.*

Take the position of load, if not already there, open the gate of the magazine with the right thumb, take five cartridges from the box or belt, and place them, with the bullets to the front, in the magazine, turning the barrel slightly to the left to facilitate the insertion of the cartridges; close the gate and carry the right hand to the small of the stock.

To load from the magazine the command *From magazine* will be given preceding that of *LOAD;* the *cut-off* will be turned up on coming to the position of *load*.

To resume loading from the belt the command *From belt* will be given preceding the command *LOAD;* the *cut-off* will be turned down on coming to the position of *load*.

The commands *from magazine* and *from belt*, indicating the change in the manner of loading, will not be repeated in subsequent commands.

The words *from belt* apply to cartridge box as well as belt.

In loading from the magazine care should be taken to push the bolt fully forward and turn the handle down before drawing the bolt back, as otherwise the extractor will not catch the cartridge in the chamber, and jamming will occur with the cartridge following.

To fire from the magazine, the command *MAGAZINE FIRE* may be given at any time. The cut-off is turned up and an increased rate of fire is executed. After the magazine is exhausted the cut-off is turned down and the firing continued, loading from the belt.

Magazine fire is employed only when, in the opinion platoon leader or company commander, the maximum fire becomes necessary.

Digitized by Google

142. *UNLOAD.*

All take the position of load, turn the *cut-off* up, if not already there, turn the safety lock to the left, and alternately open and close the chamber until all the cartridges are ejected. After the last cartridge is ejected the chamber is closed and the trigger pulled. The cartridges are then picked up, cleaned, and returned to the box or belt, and the piece brought to the order.

148. *CLIP FIRE.*

Turn the cut-off up; *fire at will* (reloading from the magazine) until the cartridges in the piece are exhausted; turn the cut-off down; fill magazine; reload and take the position of *suspend firing.*

150. *CEASE FIRING.*

Firing stops; pieces not already there are brought to the position of load, the cartridge is drawn or the empty shell is ejected, the trigger is pulled, sights are laid down, and the piece is brought to the order.

Cease firing is used for long pauses to prepare for changes of position or to steady the men.

Digitized by Google

UD
160
.U57

INFANTRY

DRILL REGULATIONS

UNITED STATES ARMY

REVISED 1904.

By Authority of the War Department.

THE M. C. LILLEY & CO.
COLUMBUS, O.

Digitized by Google

WAR DEPARTMENT.

Document No. 229.

OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF.

Digitized by Google

WAR DEPARTMENT,
Washington, October 3, 1891.

A board of officers consisting of Lieut Col. John C. Bates, wentieth Infantry; Lieut. Col. George B. Sanford, Ninth Cavlry; Maj. Henry C. Hasbrouck, Fourth Artillery; Maj. John C. Gilmore, Assistant Adjutant-General; Capt. Joseph T. Haskell, Twenty-third Infantry; Capt. Edward S. Godfrey, Seventh Cavalry, and Capt. James M. Lancaster, Third Artillery, with First Lieut. George Andrews, Twenty-fifth Infantry, as recorder at first, and later, First Lieut. John T. French, jr., Fourth Artillery, having prepared a system of Drill Regulations for Infantry which has been approved by the President, it is herewith published for the information and government of the Army, and for the observance of the militia of the United States.

With a view to insure uniformity throughout the Army, all infantry exercises and maneuvers not embraced in this system are prohibited, and those herein prescribed will be strictly observed.

REDFIELD PROCTOR,
Secretary of War.

WAR DEPARTMENT,
Washington, June 23, 1904.

A special section of the War Department General Staff having prepared, under the direction of the Chief of Staff, a complete revision of the Infantry Drill Regulations, which has been approved by the President, it is herewith published for the information and government of the Army and the organized militia of the United States.

With a view to insure uniformity throughout the Army, all infantry exercises and maneuvers not embraced in this system are prohibited, and those herein prescribed will be strictly observed.

WM. H. TAFT,
Secretary of War.

233700 Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

U28 F12TR

ORDER OF SUBJECTS.

	PAGE.
Definitions	9
General principles	11
Extended order	13
School of the soldier	18
Instruction without arms	18
Setting-up exercises	21
Steps and marchings	24
Instruction with arms	27
Manual of arms	29
Instruction of the skirmisher	38
School of the squad	40
Close order	40
Marchings	43
Turnings	46
To stack and take arms	48
Positions kneeling and lying down	49
Inspection of arms	51
Loadings and firings	51
Extended order	56
School of the company	61
Close order	61
Movements by platoons	75
Route step	81
Single rank	82
Extended order	82
School of the battalion	91
Close order	91
Formations in mass	112
Movements by platoons and sections	115
Extended order	
Remarks on troops in battle	

Digitized by Google

	Page.
Evolutions of the regiment	127
Close order	127
Column of masses	133
To deploy the column of masses	134
Line of masses	135
Order in echelon	138
Extended order	139
The brigade	141
Close order	141
Examples of orders and movements	142
The brigade in battle	144
The division	145
The division in battle	146
The corps	146
Ceremonies	147
General Rules	147
Reviews	148
General rules for reviews	148
Battalion review	151
Regimental review	153
Brigade review	153
Division review	154
Garrison review	155
Parades	156
Battalion parade	156
Regimental parade	158
Brigade parade	161
Street parades	161
Inspections	162
Company inspection	162
Battalion inspection	164
Regimental inspection	166
Muster	166
Regimental, battalion or company muster	166
Escorts	167
Escort of the color	167
Escort of honor	168
Funeral escort	169
Guard mounting	170
Manual of the saber	177
The color	181
The band	182

Digitized by Google

Page.
Advance and rear guard 184
Outposts 187
Marches 189
Camping 191
Pitching tents 196
Honors 203
Trumpet calls, etc 206
Trumpet calls 208
Drill signals 221
Marches 227
Quicksteps 230
Drum and fife signals 234
Appendix 243

Digitized by Google

Attention is called to the change in the Infantry Drill Regulations, U. S. Army, noted below.

G. O. 135, JUNE 18, 1907, WAR DEPT.
[EXTRACT]

* * * * * * * * *

III. Pars. 137 and 138, Appendix, Infantry Drill Regulations, are amended to read as follows:

137. Par. 137 of the text does not apply to the United Statet magazine rifle, model 1898.

138. Being in line at order arms: 1, Squad. 2. Load. At the command load, each front rank man makes a half face to the right and plants the right foot so that the heel is about six inches to the rear and two inches to the right of the left heel, the feet making with each other an angle of about seventy degrees; each rear rank man moves forward, plants his left toe near the right toe of his file leader, and brings the right foot to its corresponding position as described for the front rank; the men of both ranks raise the piece with the right hand and drop it into the left at the balance, left thumb extending along the stock, muzzle at the height of the breast, and carry the right hand to the small of the stock. (Two) With the right hand turn and draw the bolt back, take a cartridge between the thumb and first two fingers and place it in the receiver; place palm of the hand against the back of the bolt handle and thrust the bolt home with a quick motion, turning down the handle; carry the hand to the small of the stock. This position is designated for reference as that of load (standing).

* * * * * * * * *

By order of the Acting Secretary of War:
WILLIAM P. DUVALL, Brig. Gen., Act. Chief of Staff

Digitized by Google

INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS.

UNITED STATES ARMY.

DEFINITIONS.

Alignment: A straight line upon which several men or bodies of troops are formed, or are to be formed.

Base: The element on which a movement is regulated.

Center: The middle point or element of a command.

Column: A formation in which the elements are placed one behind another.

Deploy: To extend the front.

Depth: The space from head to rear of any formation, including the leading and rear elements.

Disposition: The distribution of the fractions of a body of troops, and the formations and duties assigned to each, for the accomplishment of a desired end.

Distance: Space in the direction of depth.

Drill: The exercises and evolutions taught on the drill ground.

Echelon: A formation in which the subdivisions are placed one behind another, extending beyond and unmasking one another, either wholly or in part.

In battle formation this term is also employed to designate the different lines. Example: The *first echelon*, the firing line; the *second echelon*, the support.

Element: A file, squad, platoon, company, or larger body.

Evolution: A movement executed by several battalions, or larger units, for the purpose of passing from one formation to another.

Facing Distance: Fourteen inches, *i. e.*, the difference between the front of a man in ranks including his interval, and his depth.

File: Two men, the front rank man and the corresponding man of the rear rank. The front rank man is the *file leader*. A file which has no rear rank man is a *blank file*. The term "files" applies also to individual men in single rank formation.

File Closers: Officers and noncommissioned officers posted in rear of the line.

Flank: The right or left of a command in line or column; the element on the right or left of a line.

Digitized by Google

In speaking of the enemy, one says, "his right flank;" "his left wing," to indicate the flank or wing which the enemy would so designate.

Flank Attack: A move made against the enemy's flank.

Flankers: Men so posted or marched as to protect the flank of a column.

Flank March: A march, whatever the formation, by which troops move along the front of the enemy's position.

Formation: Arrangement of the elements of a command. The placing of all fractions in their order in line, in column, or for battle.

Front: The space, in width, occupied by a command, either in line or column.

Front also denotes the direction of the enemy.

Guide: An officer, noncommissioned officer, or private, upon whom the command, or fraction thereof, regulates its march.

Head: The leading element of a column.

Interval: Space between elements of the same line.

Left: The left extremity or element of a body of troops.

Line: A formation in which the different elements are abreast of each other.

Maneuver: A movement made according to the nature of the ground with reference to the position and movements of the enemy.

Order, Close: The normal formation in which soldiers are regularly arranged in line or column.

Order, Extended: The formation in which the soldiers, or the subdivisions, or both, are separated by intervals greater than in close order.

Pace: Thirty inches; the length of the full step in quick time.

Ploy: To diminish front.

Point of Rest: The point at which a formation begins.

Rank: A line of men placed side by side.

Right: The right extremity or element of a body of troops.

Scouts: Men detailed to precede a command on the march and when forming for battle, to gather and report information concerning the enemy and the nature of the ground.

Tactics: The art of handling troops in the presence of the enemy.

Turning Movement: An extended movement around the enemy's flank for the purpose of threatening or attacking his flank or rear.

Wing: The portion of [illegible]ommand from the center to the flank; the battalion [illegible]lest body that is divided into wings.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

1. In close order, all details, detachments and other bodies of troops are habitually formed in double rank.

The interval between men in a rank is four inches; the distance between ranks is forty inches in both line and column.

The allowance for the front of a man is taken at about twenty-six inches, including the interval; the depth, about twelve inches.

To secure uniformity of interval between files when falling in and in alignments, each man places the palm of the left hand upon the hip, fingers pointing downward. In the first case the hand is dropped by the side when the man next on the left has his interval; in the second case, at the command *front*.

2. Distance is measured from the back of the man in front to the breast of the man in rear.

The distance between subdivisions in column is measured from guide to guide.

The distance between commands in column is measured from the rear guide of the preceding, to the leading guide of the following command.

3. The interval between men is measured from elbow to elbow; between companies, squads, etc., from the left elbow of the left man, or guide, of the group on the right to the right elbow of the right man, or guide, of he group on the left.

4. Movements that may be executed toward either flank are explained as toward but one flank, it being necessary to substitute the word "left" for "right," and the reverse, to have the explanation of the corresponding movement toward the other flank. The commands are given for the execution of the movements toward either flank. The substitute word of the command is placed within parentheses.

5. In movements in which the guide may be either right, left or center, it is indicated in the command thus: *Guide (right, left, or center)*.

6. Any movement may be executed either from the halt or when marching, if not otherwise prescribed.

7. Any movement not specially excepted, may be executed in double time. If the movement be from the halt, or when

Digitized by Google

marching in quick time, the command *double time* precedes the command *march;* if marching in double time, the command *double time* is omitted.

To hasten the execution of a movement begun in quick time, the command: 1. *Double time*, 2. ***MARCH*** may be given; only those units that have not completed the movement take up the double time.

8. There are two kinds of commands:

The *preparatory* command, such as *forward*, indicates the movement that is to be executed.

The command of *execution*, such as ***MARCH, HALT,*** or ***ARMS,*** causes the execution.

Preparatory commands are distinguished by *italics*, those of *execution* by ***CAPITALS.***

Where it is not mentioned in the text who gives the commands prescribed, they are to be given by the instructor.

The preparatory command should be given at such an interval of time before the command of execution as to admit of being properly understood; the command of *execution* should be given at the instant the movement is to commence.

The tone of command is animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the number of men under instruction.

Each preparatory command is enunciated distinctly and pronounced in an ascending tone of voice, but always in such manner that the command of *execution* may be more energetic and elevated.

The command of *execution* is firm in tone and brief.

When giving commands to troops it is usually best to face toward them.

Indifference in giving commands must be avoided as it leads to laxity in execution. Commands should be given with spirit at all times.

9. To secure uniformity, officers and noncommissioned officers should be practiced in giving commands.

10. The signals and trumpet calls should be frequently used in instruction, in order that the officers and men may readily recognize them.

11. In the different schools, the posts of the officers and noncommissioned officers are specified, but as instructors they go wherever their presence is necessary. As file closers it is their duty to rectify mistakes and insure steadiness and promptness in the ranks.

12. To revoke a preparatory command, or, being at a halt, to

Digitized by Google

begin anew a movement improperly begun, the instructor commands: ***AS YOU WERE,*** at which the movement ceases and the former position is resumed.

13. To stay the execution of a movement when marching, for the correction of errors, the instructor commands: 1. *In place*, 2. ***HALT,*** when all halt and stand fast. To resume the movement he commands: 1. *Resume*, 2. ***MARCH.***

14. The instructor always maintains a military bearing, and by a quiet, firm demeanor sets a proper example to the men.

15. Short and frequent drills are preferable to long ones, which exhaust the attention.

EXTENDED ORDER.

16. Instruction in extended order on account of its importance, is taken up as soon as recruits have had a few drills in close order. Movements including the normal attack are first taught on the drill ground with every attention to detail. The instruction is then taken up on varied ground.

The Extension.

17. Extended order may be taken up from any formation and the movements are executed in the most direct manner.

The deployment as skirmishers is made *forward* when in rear of the line to be occupied, and *by the flank* when already on that line.

If at a halt and the deployment is to be *forward* the unit is first put in march. If marching and the deployment is to be *by the flank* the unit is first halted.

At extension the normal interval between squads is fifteen paces; between skirmishers, two paces. If other intervals are desired they are specified in the commands for extension. These normal intervals are diminished if the line of squads or skirmishers of two adjacent organizations overlap.

The skirmishers close in during the advance to mid range, and upon arrival thereat the firing line contains about one man per yard of front. The intervals between companies are closed by the insertion of supports. Companies are kept together and moved as units as far as practicable.

For small commands, in which there is less danger of the line being pierced, it is not only allowable but preferable to extend with much greater intervals and to omit the closing in during the advance; the firing line, in such case, consisting of skirmishers at such interval as may be designated by the commander.

Digitized by Google

Instruction on Varied Ground.

18. In this instruction all movements are made with reference to an enemy in an indicated direction. The location is frequently changed, different positions of the enemy are assumed on the same ground and the movements conform to the accidents of the ground.

The enemy is said to be *imaginary* when his position and force are merely assumed; *outlined* when his position and force are indicated by a few men only; *represented* when a body of troops acts as such.

Commands and Signals.

19. Men in extended order fix their attention at the first word of command, the first note of the trumpet, or the first motion of the signal; the movement commences immediately upon the completion of the command, trumpet call or signal. The use of the trumpet to give commands to a fraction of a line is prohibited.

No commands for dressing are given in extended order; the general alignment is taken toward the base.

As far as practicable commands and cautions are replaced by signals and men are required to be on the alert to observe the signals of their leader.

In making signals the saber, rifle or headdress may be held in the hand; when the saber is used it is in prolongation of the arm.

The following signals are used alone or in conjunction with verbal commands or trumpet calls:

Attention: A short whistle.

Cease Firing: A prolonged whistle.

Except in these two cases the use of the whistle is prohibited.

Forward, Right oblique, Left oblique, By the right flank, By the left flank, To the rear: Raise the arm until horizontal pointing in the desired direction; move in the desired direction.

To change direction to the right (left): Raise the left (right) arm until horizontal, extended toward the marching flank, carry the arms to the front; at the same time turn and move in the direction to be taken.

Halt: Raise the arm vertically to its full extent.

As skirmishers: Raise both arms until horizontal, extended laterally.

Assemble: Raise the arm vertically to its full extent and slowly describe small horizontal circles.

Rally: Raise the arm vertically to its full extent and describe large circles very rapidly.

Digitized by Google

The following signals are used by scouts and others to ask or transmit information.

Do you see anything? Wave the hand across the face.

Affirmative signal: Raise and lower the arm vertically twice.

Negative signal: Extend the arm horizontally twice.

Enemy in sight or hearing? Hold the rifle horizontally above the head; steadily if the enemy is in small bodies; raise and lower it in that position if he is in force.

To ask for reinforcements: Extend the arm horizontally and wave it rapidly with a circular motion.

Additional signals may be devised for use among men habitually acting as scouts.

Fire.

20. The commands for firing are the same as when in close order.

Firing with blank cartridges at an *outlined* or *represented* enemy at distances less than one hundred yards is prohibited.

Volley firing, *firing with counted cartridges*, *fire at will*, and *rapid fire* are employed.

Volley firing is ordinarily limited to the defense and *fire of position* in the attack. In the latter case selected bodies of troops in the supports and reserve fire over the heads of men in the firing line when the latter is on ground sufficiently lower than that occupied by the selected bodies to allow such fire to be used.

Fire with counted cartridges is used principally in the attack, and from the time of opening fire until mid range is reached.

Fire at will is used by the defense at nearly all stages of the action; in the attack, from the beginning of mid range to the place selected for delivering the assault.

Rapid fire is used at the decisive moment of the action, at about two hundred yards from the enemy. At the command for rapid fire, bayonets are fixed, sights set at point blank, the men fire straight to the front and continue to fire until *cease firing* is given. More than three volleys or three counted cartridges are rarely used without intermission; this to steady the men and prevent waste of ammunition. When the supply of ammunition is ample and the enemy is in large bodies, volleys may be fired by the defense at extreme range.

Volleys by squads, as limited above, are used against troops in close order at distances not exceeding—

800 yards at a line equal to the front of a squad.

1,000 yards at a line equal to the front of a platoon.

Digitized by Google

1,200 yards at a line equal to the front of a company.

These limits are not invariable; they may be exceeded under favorable conditions of wind and light when the range is accurately known.

Ranges are classified as follows:

0 to 300 yards, short range.
300 to 600 yards, mid range.
600 to 1,000 yards, long range.
1,000 to 2,000 yards, extreme range.

Individual men acting beyond the immediate control of leaders do not fire at distances over—

400 yards at a man lying down.
500 yards at a man kneeling.
600 yards at a man standing.
700 yards at a man mounted.
800 yards at a squad or line of skirmishers.

Sharpshooters may, when permitted by an officer, fire at greater distances.

Fire Discipline.

21. Officers and noncommissioned officers exact from the men obedience to the following rules:

a. Never fire unless ordered.

b. Never exceed the number of cartridges indicated,

c. Never fire after the command or signal, *cease firing*.

d. Always fire at the named objective; if so situated as to be unable to see the objective, do not fire.

e. Always aim at the bottom line of the objective; if it be a line of men, aim at the feet; if a clump of trees, aim at the junction of tree trunks and ground.

Scouts, from the nature of their duties, are given greater latitude. They are permitted to carry their pieces loaded and at the ready, and the question of firing is left largely to their judgment. It is frequently necessary for them to fire in self-defense, to give the alarm, or to avail themselves of opportunity to fire upon leaders of the enemy.

Loadings and Firings.

22. Pieces are loaded prior to taking extended formation. From that time until the end of the battle, or exercise the pieces are, or are supposed to be, kept loaded without formal command.

The firings are always executed at a halt.

In advancing to the attack skirmishers lie down on being

Digitized by Google

halted. Those who can not see the objective rise to the kneeling or sitting position; and of these, those who can not see the objective rise to the standing position.

In rapid fire, skirmishers use positions giving greatest rapidity and accuracy of fire. They may be directed to kneel or rise before the commands for rapid fire are given.

Movement.

23. Skirmishers march at ease carrying the piece in the most convenient manner with muzzle elevated.

A line of squads *advances, halts, moves to a flank* or *to the rear, turns, obliques resumes the direct march, passes from quick to double time* and *the reverse*, by the same commands and in a similar manner as a company in close order.

A line of skirmishers *advances, halts, moves by the flank* or *to the rear, turns, obliques, resumes the direct march, passes from quick to double time* and *the reverse*, by the same commands and in a similar manner as a squad in close order; *skirmishers* is substituted for *squad* in the commands. If at a halt, the movement *by the flank* or *to the rear* is executed by the same commands as when marching.

The guide of a line in extended order is habitually center.

Marching by the flank in extended order is an exceptional movement; if under fire, it is not generally undertaken unless aided by the existence of cover.

After arriving within the zone of effective infantry fire the advance is made in double time if consistent with circumstances. When the troops are much fatigued or the ground is very difficult the gait is reduced. The advance by alternate portions of the line is, if possible, made at a run.

The advance to the charge is made in double time; the charge, taken up at about thirty yards from the enemy, is, if possible, made at a run, the men shouting.

Halts.

24. On halting, skirmishers face to the front (direction of the enemy) in all cases.

Considerations governing halts are: 1st, effective fire upon the enemy; 2d, distances to be passed over; 3d, time and gaits required; 4th, cover. *All other considerations give way to those of effective fire.*

The distance between halts in the normal drill and on level ground is fifty yards. This distance, however, varies with the ground. Difficult ground and heavy fire reduce the distance

Digitized by Google

25. Generally, sergeants and corporals are the instructors, under the supervision of an officer, but the captain occasionally requires the lieutenants to act as instructors.

26. The instructor briefly explains each movement, at first executing it himself if practicable.

He requires the recruits to take by themselves the proper positions and does not touch them for the purpose of correcting them, except when they are unable to correct themselves. He avoids keeping them too long at the same movement, although each should be understood before passing to another. He exacts by degrees the desired precision and uniformity.

27. As the instruction progresses the recruits are grouped according to proficiency, in order that all may advance as rapidly as their abilities permit. Those who lack aptitude and quickness are separated from the others and placed under experienced drillmasters.

INSTRUCTION WITHOUT ARMS.

28. A few recruits, usually not exceeding four, are placed in a single rank, facing to the front and about four inches apart, arranged according to height, the tallest man on the right.

29. To teach the recruits to assemble, the instructor requires them to place the palm of the left hand upon the hip, below the belt when worn; he then places them on the same line so that the right arm of each man rests lightly against the left elbow of the man next on his right, and then directs the left hands to be replaced by the side.

30. When the recruits have learned how to take their places, the instructor commands: ***FALL IN.***

They assemble rapidly, as above prescribed, at attention, each man dropping the left hand as soon as the man next on his left has his interval.

Position of the Soldier, or Attention.

31. Heels on the same line and as near each other as the conformation of the man permits.

Feet turned out equally and forming with each other an angle about sixty degrees.

Digitized by Google

Knees straight without stiffness.

Body erect on the hips, inclined a little forward; shoulders square and falling equally.

Arms and hands hanging naturally, backs of the hands outward; little fingers opposite the seams of the trousers; elbows near the body.

Head erect and square to the front, shin slightly drawn in without constraint, eyes straight to the front.

The Rests.

32. Being at a halt, the commands are: ***FALL OUT; REST; AT EASE;*** and, 1. *Parade*, 2. ***REST.***

At the command *fall out*, the men may leave the ranks, but remain in the immediate vicinity. They resume their former places, at attention, at the command *fall in*.

At the command *rest*, each man keeps one foot in place, but is not required to preserve silence or immobility.

At the command *at ease*, each man keeps one foot in place and preserves silence, but not immobility.

1. *Parade*, 2. ***REST.*** Carry the right foot six inches straight to the rear, left knee slightly bent; clasp the hands, without constraint, in front of the center of the body, fingers joined, left hand uppermost, left thumb clasped by thumb and forefinger of right hand; preserve silence and steadiness of position.

Pl. 1, Par. 32.

33. To resume the attention: 1. *Squad*, 2. ***ATTENTION.***

The men take the position of the soldier and fix their attention.

To Dismiss the Squad.

34. Being in line at a halt: ***DISMISSED.***

Eyes Right or Left.

35. 1. *Eyes*, 2. ***RIGHT (LEFT)***, 3. ***FRONT.***

At the command *right*, turn the head to the right so as to bring the left eye in a line about two inches to the right of the center of the body, eyes fixed on the line of eyes of the men in, or supposed to be in, the same rank.

At the command *front*, turn the head and eyes to the front.

Digitized by Google

Facings.

36. To the flank: 1. *Right* (*Left*), 2. ***FACE.***

Raise slightly the left heel and right toe, face to the right, turning on the right heel, assisted by a slight pressure on the ball of the left foot; place the left foot by the side of the right. Left face is executed on the left heel.

"To face in marching" and advance, turn on the ball of either foot and step off with the other foot in the new line of direction; to face in marching without gaining ground in the new direction, turn on the ball of either foot and mark time.

To the rear: 1. *About*, 2. ***FACE.***

Raise slightly the left heel and right toe, face to the rear, turning to the right on the right heel and the ball of the left foot; replace the left foot by the side of the right.

Officers execute the about face as follows:

At the command *about*, carry the toe of the right foot about eight inches to the rear and three inches to the left of the left heel without changing the position of the left foot.

Pl. 2, Par. 37.

At the command *face*, face to the rear, turning to the right on the left heel and right toe; replace the right heel by the side of the left.

Enlisted men out of ranks may use the about face prescribed for officers.

Salute with the Hand.

37. 1. *Right* (*Left*) *hand*, 2. ***SALUTE.***

Raise the right hand smartly till the tip of forefinger touches the lower part of the headdress (if uncovered, the forehead) above the right eye, thumb and fingers extended and joined, palm to the left, forearm inclined at about forty-five degrees, hand and wrist straight. (***TWO***) Drop the arm smartly by the side.

The salute for officers is the same; the left hand is used only when the right is engaged. Officers and men, when saluting, look toward the person saluted.

For rules govering salutes see Honors.

Digitized by Google

SETTING-UP EXERCISES.

38. All soldiers are regularly practiced in the following exercises, which may be supplemented by those in authorized calisthenic manuals.

The instructor places the men three paces apart.

In these exercises it is advisable to remove blouses and caps.

As soon as the exercises are well understood they may be continued without repeating the commands. For this purpose the instructor gives the commands as prescribed, then adds: *Continue the exercise*, upon which the motions to be repeated are continuously executed until the command *halt*.

At the command *halt*, given at any time, the position of the soldier is resumed.

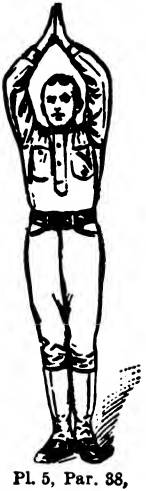
First Exercise.

1. *Arm*, 2. ***EXERCISE***, 3. ***HEAD***, 4. ***UP***, 5. ***DOWN***, 6. ***RAISE***.

At the command *exercise*, raise the arms laterally until horizontal, palms upward. ***HEAD:*** Raise the arms in a circular direction over the head, tips of fingers touching top of the head, backs of fingers in contact their full length, thumbs pointing to the rear, elbows pressed back.

Pl. 3, Par. 38, 1 Ex.

Pl. 4, Par. 38, 1 Ex.



Pl. 5, Par. 38, 1 Ex.

UP: Extend the arms upward their full length, palms touching. ***DOWN:*** Force the arms obliquely back and gradually let them fall by the sides. ***RAISE:*** Raise the arms laterally as prescribed for the second command. Continue by repeating *head up, down, raise.*

Pl. 6, Par. 38, 2 Ex.

Second Exercise.

1. *Arms vertical, palms to the front,* 2. ***RAISE,*** 3. ***DOWN,*** 4. ***UP.***

At the command *raise,* raise the arms laterally from the sides, extended to their full length, till the hands meet above the head, palms to the front, fingers pointing upward, thumbs locked, right thumb in front shoulders pressed back. ***DOWN:*** Bend over till the hands, if possible, touch the ground, keeping the arms and knees straight. ***UP:*** Straighten the body and swing the extended arms (thumbs locked) to the vertical position. Continue by repeating *down, up.*

Pl. 7, Par. 38, 2 Ex.

Third Exercise.

1. *Arm,* 2. ***EXERCISE,*** 3. ***FRONT,*** 4. ***REAR.***

At the command *exercise,* raise the arms laterally until horizontal, palms upward. ***FRONT:*** Swing the extended arms horizontally to the front, palms touching. ***REAR:*** Swing the extended arms well to the rear, inclining them slightly downward, raising the body upon the toes. Continue by repeating *front, rear,* till the men, if possible, are able to touch the backs of the hands behind the back.

Pl. 8, Par. 38, 3 Ex.

Fourth Exercise.

1. *Leg,* 2. ***EXERCISE,*** 3. ***UP.***

At the command *exercise,* place the palms of the hands on the

hips, fingers to the front, thumbs to the rear, elbows pressed back. ***UP:*** Raise the left leg to the front, bending and elevating the knee as much as possible, leg from knee to instep vertical, toe depressed. ***UP:*** Replace the left foot and raise the right leg as prescribed for the left.

Execute slowly at first, then gradually increase to the cadence of double time. Continue by repeating *up* when the right and left legs are alternately in position.

Pl. 9, Par. 38, 4 Ex.

Fifth Exercise.

1. *Leg,* 2. ***EXERCISE,*** 3. *Left* (*Right*), 4. ***FORWARD,*** 5, ***REAR,*** or, 5. ***GROUND.***

At the command *exercise,* place the hands on the hips, as in Fourth Exercise. ***FORWARD:*** Move the left leg to the front, knee straight, so as to advance the foot about fifteen inches, toe turned out, sole nearly horizontal, body balanced on right foot. ***REAR:*** Move the leg to the rear, knee straight, toe on a line with the right heel, sole nearly horizontal. Continue by repeating *forward, rear.*

When the recruit has learned to balance himself, the command *forward* is followed by ***GROUND:*** Throw the weight of the body forward by rising on the ball of the right foot, advance and plant the left, left heel thirty inches from the right, and advance the right leg quickly to the position of *forward.* Continue by repeating *ground* when the right and left legs are alternately in the position of *forward.*

Sixth Exercise.

1. *Lung,* 2. ***EXERCISE,*** 3. ***INHALE,*** 4. ***EXHALE.***

At the command *exercise,* place the hands on the hips as in Fourth Exercise. ***INHALE:*** Inflate the lungs to full capacity by short successive inhalations through the nose. ***EXHALE:*** Empty the lungs by a continuous exhalation through the mouth. Continue by repeating *inhale, exhale.*

Digitized by Google

STEPS AND MARCHINGS.

Quick Time.

39. The length of the full step in quick time is thirty inches, measured from heel to heel, and the cadence is at the rate of one hundred and twenty steps per minute.

40. To march in quick time: 1. *forward*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command *forward*, throw the weight of the body upon the right leg, left knee straight.

At the command *march*, move the left foot smartly, but without jerk, straight forward thirty inches from the right, measuring from heel to heel, sole near the ground; straighten and turn the knee slightly out; at the same time throw the weight of the body forward and plant the foot without shock, weight of body resting upon it; next, in like manner, advance the right foot and plant it as above; continue the march.

The cadence is at first given slowly, and gradually increased to that of quick time.

The arms hang naturally, the hands moving about six inches to the front and three inches to the rear of the seam of the trousers.

41. The instructor, when necessary, indicates the cadence of the step by calling *one*, *two*, *three*, *four*; or *left*, *right*, the instant the left and right foot, respectively, should be planted.

This rule is general.

Double Time.

42. The length of the full step in double time is thirty-six inches; the cadence is at the rate of one hundred and eighty steps per minute.

43. To march in double time: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Double time*, 3. ***MARCH.***

At the command *forward*, throw the weight of the body on the right leg. At the command *march*, raise the hands until the forearms are horizontal, fingers closed, nails toward the body, elbows to the rear; carry forward the left foot, knee slightly bent and somewhat raised, and plant the foot thirty-six inches from the right; then execute the same motion with the right foot; continue this alternate movement of the feet, throwing the weight of the body forward and allowing a natural swinging motion to the arms.

If marching in quick time, the command *forward*, is omitted. At the command *march*, given as either foot strikes the ground, take one step in quick, and t' tep off in double time.

To resume the quick time: 1. *Quick time*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command *march*, given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot in double time, resume the quick time, dropping the hands by the sides.

Recruits are also exercised in running, the principles being the same as for double time.

When marching in double time and in running, the men breathe as much as possible through the nose, keeping the mouth closed.

Distances of one hundred and one hundred and eighty yards are marked on the drill ground, and noncommissioned officers and men practiced in keeping correct cadence and length of pace in both quick and double time.

44. To arrest the march in quick or double time: 1. *Squad*, 2. ***HALT.***

At the command *halt*, given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot; place the foot in rear by the side of the other. If in double time drop the hands by the sides.

The halt, while *marking time*, and marching at the *half step*, *side step*, and *back step*, is executed by the same commands.

To Mark Time.

45. Being in march: 1. *Mark time*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command *march*, given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot; bring up the foot in rear, and continue the cadence by alternately raising and planting each foot on line with the other. The feet are raised about four inches from the ground and planted with the same energy as when advancing.

To resume the full step: 1. *Full step*, 2. ***MARCH.***

Half Step.

46. Being in march: 1. *Half step*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command *march*, given as either foot strikes the ground, take steps of fifteen inches.

To resume the full step: 1. *Full step*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The length of the half step in double time is eighteen inches.

Side Step.

47. Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (*Left*) *step*, 2. ***MARCH.***

Carry and plant the right foot ten inches to the right; bring the left foot beside it and continue the movement in cadence of quick time

Digitized by Google

The side step is used for small intervals only and is not executed in double time.

Back Step.

48. Being at a halt: 1. *Backward*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command *march*, step back with the left foot fifteen inches straight to the rear, then with the right, and so on, the feet alternating.

At the command *halt*, bring back the foot in front to the side of the one in rear.

The back step is used for short distances only, and is not executed in double time.

To March by the Flank.

49. Being in march: 1. *By the right (left) flank*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command *march*, given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot, then face to the right in marching and step off in the new direction with the right foot.

To March to the Rear.

50. Being in march: 1. *To the rear*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command *march*, given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot; then, turning on the balls of both feet, face to the right about and immediately step off with the left foot.

If marching in double time, turn to the right about, taking four steps in place, keeping the cadence, and then step off with the left foot.

Change Step.

51. Being in march: 1. *Change step*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command *march*, given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot; plant the toe of the right foot near the heel of the left and step off with the left foot.

The change on the right foot is similarly executed, the command *march* being given as the left foot strikes the ground.

Covering and Marching on Points.

52. The instructor selects two points and requires the recruits, in succession, to place themselves upon the prolongation of the straight line through these points and then to march upon them in both quick and double time.

It should be demonstrated to the recruits that they can not

Digitized by Google

march in a straight line without selecting two points in the desired direction and keeping them covered while advancing.

A distant and conspicuous landmark is next selected as a point of direction; the recruit is required to choose two intermediate points in line with the point of direction and to march upon it by covering these points, new points being selected as he advances.

INSTRUCTION WITH ARMS.

53. The recruit, as soon as possible, is taught the use, nomenclature (Pl. 10) and care of his rifle; when fair progress has been made in the instruction without arms, he is taught the manual of arms; instruction without arms and that with arms alternate, and embrace both close and extended order.

General Rules.

54. 1st. To prevent accidents, the chamber is opened and the magazine examined, when details, detachments and other bodies of troops are first formed and again just before they are dismissed.

2d. The piece is not carried loaded, nor with cartridges in the magazine except when specially ordered.

3d. The *cut off* is kept turned "off" except when actually using cartridges. In simulated loading and firing the motions are made as though the magazine was in use. When cartridges are to be used the instructor cautions the men to turn the *cut off* "on."

4th. The piece is habitually carried locked; that is, with the *safety lock* at the "safe."

5th. The bayonet is not fixed except for instruction in bayonet exercise, on guard, or when needed for purposes of defense or offense.

6th. *Fall in*, is executed with pieces at order arms.

7th. *Fall out*, *Rest*, and *At ease*, are executed as without arms. On resuming attention the position of order arms is taken.

8th. In the instruction of the recruit, to prevent interference with or apprehension by the man on his left, especially when bayonets are fixed, care is taken in coming to the position of port arms, and like positions of the piece, that the muzzle be not swung to the rear nor dropped farther to the left than necessary for taking the position.

9th. If at the order the piece is brought to the right shoulder at the command *march*, the three motions corresponding with the first three steps. Short movements such as *side step*, *back step*, etc., may be executed at the trail by prefacing the preparatory

Pl. 10, Par. 52.

Digitized by Google

command with the words *At trail;* as, 1. *At trail, right step,* 2. ***MARCH:*** the trail is taken at the command *march.*

When the facings, alignments, open and close ranks, taking intervals or distances, and assembling, are executed from the order, raise the piece to the trail while in motion and resume the order on halting.

10th. The piece is brought to the order on halting. The execution of the order begins when the halt is completed.

11th. A disengaged hand in double time is held as when without arms.

MANUAL OF ARMS.

General Rules.

55. 1st. In all positions of the left hand at the balance (center of gravity, bayonet unfixed), the thumb clasps the piece, except in *present arms,* in which position the thumb is extended along the stock; the sling if attached is included in the grasp of the hand.

2d. In all positions of the piece, "diagonally across the body," the positions of the piece, left arm and hand, are the same as in port arms.

3d. In resuming the *order* from any position in the manual, the motion next to the last concludes with the butt of the piece about three inches from the ground, barrel to the rear, the left hand above and near the right, steadying the piece, fingers extended and joined, forearm and wrist straight and inclining downward, all fingers of the right hand grasping the piece. To complete the order, lower the piece gently to the ground with the right hand, drop the left quickly by the side, and take the position of order arms.

Allowing the piece to drop through the right hand to the ground, or other similar abuse of the rifle to produce effect in executing the manual, is prohibited.

Pl. 11, Par. 55 3d.

4th. In coming to the *right (left) shoulder* from any position in the manual, the motion next to the last concludes with the piece on the shoulder, barrel up and inclined at an angle of about forty-five degrees from the horizontal, trigger guard in the hollow of the shoulder, right elbow near the side, heel of the butt between the first two fingers of the right hand, thumb

and fingers closed on the butt, the right hand in front and to the left of the right elbow, so as to bring the piece into a vertical plane perpendicular to the front; thumb and fingers of left hand, extended and joined, fingers resting on the small of the stock, the tip of forefinger touching end of cocking piece, wrist straight and elbow down. To complete the movement, drop the left hand by the side.

5th. The cadence of the motions is that of quick-time; the recruits are at first required to give their whole attention to the details of the motions, the cadence being gradually acquired as they become accustomed to handling their pieces. The instructor may require them to count aloud in cadence with the motions.

6th. Open and close chamber, sling arms, secure arms, fix and unfix bayonets, stack and take arms, and movements relative to the cartridge and sight, are executed with promptness and regularity, but not in cadence.

7th. The manual is taught at a halt and the movements are, for the purpose of instruction, divided into motions and executed in detail; in this case the command of *execution* determines the prompt execution of the first motion, and the commands, ***TWO, THREE. FOUR;*** that of the other motions. To execute the movements in detail, the instructor first cautions: *By the numbers;* all movements divided into motions are then executed as above explained until he cautions: *Without the numbers;* or commands movements other than those in the manual of arms.

8th. Before requiring recruits to take a position or execute a motion for the first time, the instructor executes the same for illustration; after which he causes them to execute it individually, then to execute it together at command.

9th. In the battle exercises, or whenever circumstances require, the regular positions of the manual of arms and the firings may be ordered without regard to the previous position of the piece.

Position of Order Arms.

56. The butt rests evenly on the ground, barrel to the rear, toe of the butt on a line with and touching the toe of the right shoe, arms hanging naturally, elbows near the body, right hand holding the piece between the thumb and fingers, the first two fingers in front, the others in rear.

57. Being at order arms: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Without changing the position of the fingers, with the right hand carry the piece in front of the center of the body, barrel to the rear and vertical, grasp it with the left hand at the balance,

Digitized by Google

forearm horizontal and resting against the body. (*TWO*) Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand.

Being at present arms: 1. *Order*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Let go with the right hand, lower and carry the piece to the right with the left hand, regrasp the piece with all the fingers of the right just above the lower band, let go with the left hand

Pl. 12, Par. 56.

Pl. 13, Par. 56.

Pl. 14, Par. 57.

Pl. 15, Par. 58.

and take the next to last position in coming to the order. (*TWO*) Complete the order.

58. Being at order arms: 1. *Port*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Without changing the position of the fingers, with the right hand raise and throw the piece diagonally across the body, grasp it smartly with both hands, the right, palm down, at the small of the stock; the left, palm up, at the balance, thumb clasping the piece, barrel up, sloping to the left and crossing opposite the junction of the neck with the left shoulder; right forearm horizontal; left forearm resting against the body; the piece in a vertical plane parallel to the front.

Being at port arms: 1. *Order*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Let go with the right hand, lower and carry the piece to the right with the left hand, regrasp the piece with all the fingers

the right just above the lower band, let go with the left hand and take the next to last position in coming to the order. (*TWO*) Complete the order.

59. Being at port arms: 1. *Open*, 2. ***CHAMBER***, 3. *Close*, 4. ***CHAMBER***.

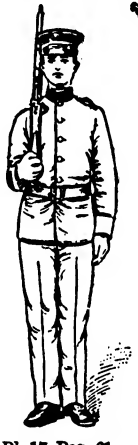
At the second command, turn the *safety lock* up and seize the bolt handle with the thumb and forefinger of the right hand.

Pl. 16, Par. 59.

turn the handle up, draw the bolt back and glance at the chamber and magazine to see that they are empty.

At the fourth command, push the bolt forward, turn the bolt handle down, turn the *safety lock* to the "safe" and carry the right hand to the small of the stock.

60. Being at present arms: 1. *Port*, 2. ***ARMS***.



Pl. 17, Par. 61.

Pl. 18, Par. 61.

Carry the piece diagonally across the body and take the position of port arms.

Being at port arms: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS***.

Carry the piece to a vertical position in front of the center of the body, barrel to the rear, and take the position of present arms.

61. Being at order arms: 1. *Right shoulder*, 2. ***ARMS***.

Without changing the position of the fingers, with the right hand raise and carry the piece diagonally across the body, carry the right hand quickly to the butt, embracing it, the heel between the first two fingers. (*TWO.*) Take the next to last position in coming to the right shoulder. (*THREE.*) Drop the left hand by the side.

Being at right shoulder arms: 1. *Order*, 2. ***ARMS***.

Press the butt down quickly with the right hand and throw the piece diagonally across the bod[illegible] right hand, retaining its

Digitized by Google

grasp of the butt. (*TWO*) Let go with the right hand, lower and carry the piece to the right with the left hand, regrasp the piece with all the fingers of the right just above the lower band, let go with the left hand and take the next to last position in coming to the order. (*THREE*) Complete the order.

62. Being at port arms: 1. *Right shoulder*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Change the right hand to the butt. (*TWO*) take the next to last position in coming to the right shoulder. (*THREE*) Drop the left hand by the side.

Being at right shoulder arms: 1. *Port*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Press the butt down quickly with the right hand and throw the piece diagonally across the body, the right hand retaining its grasp at the butt. (*TWO*) Change the right hand to the small of the stock.

Pl. 19, Par. 64.

63. Being at right shoulder arms: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Press the butt down quickly with the right hand and throw the piece diagonally across the body, the right hand retaining its grasp of the butt. (*TWO*) Change the right hand to the small of the stock. (*THREE*) Carry the piece to a vertical position in front of the center of the body, barrel to the rear, and take the position of present arms.

Being at present arms: 1. *Right shoulder*, 2. ***ARMS.*** Carry the piece diagonally across the body and the right hand quickly to the butt, embracing it, the heel between the first two fingers. (*TWO*) Take the next to last position in coming to the right shoulder. (*THREE*) Drop the left hand by the side.

64. Being at right (left) shoulder arms: 1, *Left (Right) shoulder*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Change the right hand quickly to and grasp the small of the stock, back of hand to the right; at the same time grasp the butt with the left hand, heel between first and second fingers, thumb and fingers closed on the stock. (*TWO*) Press down smartly on the butt, raising the piece to a nearly vertical position, barrel to the front; carry and place the piece on the left shoulder, barrel up, trigger guard in the hollow of the left shoulder. (*THREE*) Drop the right hand by the side.

65. Being at left shoulder arms: 1. *Order*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Grasp the piece with the right hand at the small of the stock. (*TWO*) Take the position of port arms. (*THREE*) Take the next

to last position in coming to the order. (*FOUR*) Complete the order.

Being at order arms: 1. *Left shoulder*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Take the position of port arms. (*TWO*) Carry the piece with the right hand to the position of left shoulder, changing the left hand to the butt. (*THREE*) Drop the right hand by the side.

66. Being at left shoulder arms: 1. *Port*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Grasp the piece with the right hand at the small of the stock. (*TWO*) Take the position of port arms.

Being at port arms: 1. *Left shoulder*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Carry the piece with the right hand to the position of left shoulder, changing the left hand to the butt. (*TWO*) Drop the right hand by the side.

67. Being at left shoulder arms: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Grasp the piece with the right hand at the small of the stock. (*TWO*) Take the position of port arms. (*THREE*) Take the position of present arms.

Pl. 20, Par. 68.

Being at present arms: 1. *Left shoulder*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Take the position of port arms. (*TWO*) Carry the piece with the right hand to the position of left shoulder, changing the left hand to the butt. (*THREE*) Drop the right hand by the side.

68. Being at order arms: 1. *Parade*, 2. ***REST.***

Carry the right foot six inches straight to the rear, left knee slightly bent, carry the muzzle in front of the center of the body, barrel to the left, grasp the piece with the left hand just below the stacking swivel, and with the right hand below and against the left.

Pl. 21, Par. 69.

Being at parade rest: 1. *Squad*, 2. ***ATTENTION.***

Resume the order, the left hand quitting the piece opposite the right breast.

69. Being at order arms: 1. *Fix*, 2. ***BAYONET.***

Grasp tip of rod bayonet with thumb and forefinger of left hand, press catch with tip of right forefinger, draw rod bayonet out to second stop; resume the order.

Digitized by Google

70. Being at order arms: 1. *Charge*, 2. ***BAYONETS.***

Half face to the right, carry the right heel six inches to the rear and two inches to the right of the left heel, at the same time raise the piece with the right hand without changing position of fingers, inclining the barrel to the front, grasp it with the left hand at the balance, back of hand down, thumb clasping piece, elbow against the body, grasp the small of the stock with the right hand and bring the point of the bayonet to the height of the breast, right hand supporting the stock firmly against the front of the right hip, the body inclined slightly forward, left knee slightly bent.

Being at charge bayonet: 1. *Order*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Face to the front, at the same time let go the piece with the right hand and lower it to the right side with the left hand, regrasp it with the right just above the lower band, and take the next to last position in coming to the order. (***TWO***) Complete the order.

71. Being at port arms: 1. *Charge*, 2. ***BAYONET.***

Half face to the right and take the position of charge bayonet.

Being at charge bayonet: 1. *Port*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Face to the front, and at the same time take the position of port arms.

72. Being at right shoulder arms: 1. *Charge*, 2. ***BAYONET.***

Press the butt down quickly with the right hand and throw the piece diagonally across the body, the right hand retaining its grasp of the butt. (***TWO***) Change the right hand to the small of the stock. (***THREE***) Take the position of charge bayonet.

Being at charge bayonet: 1. *Right shoulder*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Face to the front, at the same time carry the piece diagonally across the body and the right hand quickly to the butt embracing it, the heel between the first two fingers. (***TWO***) Take the next to last position in coming to the right shoulder. (***THREE***) Drop the left hand by the side.

Pl. 22, Par. 70.

73. Being at left shoulder arms: 1. *Charge*, 2. ***BAYONET.***

Grasp the piece with the right hand at the small of the stock. (***TWO***) Take the position of port arms. (***THREE***) Take the position of charge bayonet.

Being at charge bayonet: 1. *Left shoulder*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Face to the front and at the same time take the position of port

Digitized by Google

arms. (*TWO*) Carry the piece with the right hand to the position of left shoulder, changing the left hand to the butt. (*THREE*) Drop the right hand by the side.

74. Being at order arms: 1. *Unfix*, 2. ***BAYONET.***

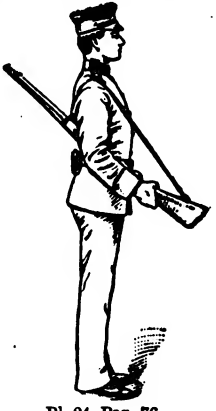
Grasp tip of rod bayonet with the thumb and forefinger of the left hand, press in catch with tip of right forefinger, force rod bayonet home; resume the order.

If marching, the bayonet is fixed or unfixed in the most expeditious and convenient manner, and the piece returned to the original position.

Pl. 23, Par. 75.

75. Being at order arms: 1. *Trail*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Grasp the piece with all the fingers of the right hand without changing its position, raise piece slightly, right arm slightly bent, and incline the muzzle forward so that the barrel makes an angle of about thirty degrees with the perpendicular. When it can be done without danger or inconvenience to others, the piece may be grasped at the balance and the muzzle lowered until the piece is horizontal; a similar position in the left hand may be used.



Pl. 24, Par. 76.

The piece should be brought to the trail on coming indoors.

Being at trail arms: 1. *Order*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Lower the piece with the right hand and resume the order.

76. 1. *Sling*, 2. ***ARMS.***

The right arm is passed between the rifle and the sling which rests upon the shoulder, piece in rear of shoulder, muzzle up and barrel to the rear; right hand steadying the piece.

The piece may be slung on either shoulder.

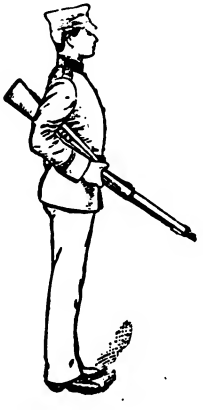
The gun sling should never be so tightly drawn that it can not be readily adjusted. Arms are slung only on route marches.

77. 1. *Secure*, 2. ***ARMS.***

The piece is held in the right hand at the balance, barrel down, sloping downward and to the front; right hand supported against

Digitized by Google

the right hip, upper arm against the stock. A corresponding position in the left hand may be used. Secure arms is used only in inclement weather.



Pl. 25, Par. 77

Pl. 26, Par. 78.

Pl. 27, Par. 78.

Rifle Salute.

78. Being at right (left) shoulder arms: 1. *Rifle*, 2. ***SALUTE***

Carry the left (right) hand smartly to the small of the stock, forearm horizontal, palm of hand down, thumb and forefingers extended and joined, forefinger touching end of cocking piece. (***TWO***) Drop the left (right) hand by the side.

Being at order or trail arms: 1. *Rifle*, 2. ***SALUTE.***

Carry the left hand smartly to the right side, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forefinger against piece near the muzzle. (***TWO***) Drop the left hand by the side.

To Dismiss the Squad.

79. Being at a halt: 1. *Port*, 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. *Open*, 4. ***CHAMBER,*** 5. *Close*, 6. ***CHAMBER,*** 7. ***DISMISSED.***

Digitized by Google

INSTRUCTION OF THE SKIRMISHER.

80. This instruction, at first individual, is begun when the soldier has made some progress in marching and in handling the piece. Movements are first taught on the drill ground with every attention to detail. Afterwards under direction of company officers, the instruction is given on ground previously selected with reference to the movements to be executed. The location is frequently changed to accustom the men to new situations, and care is taken never to order movements or positions at variance with the accidents of the ground.

81. Having conducted the men to a point overlooking the vicinity, the instructor calls attention to the form of the ground and the different military purposes to which its features are adaptable, using and explaining the military terms that apply.

He explains the circumstances under which each accident of the ground would be valuable as cover, and how to use it, both in its original condition and by modifying it, against an enemy supposed to be in a certain direction.

82. The recruits are posted at points indicated by the instructor, in positions to see and fire upon the enemy. To obtain the best cover it is generally necessary to lie down or kneel, but considerations of health occasionally make it necessary to permit the men to stand. In such cases it is explained why the usual practice is departed from.

Use of Cover.

83. The best kind of cover is that which, while it masks the skirmishers from the sight and fire of the enemy, affords favorable conditions for firing and for readily advancing and retiring.

84. The instructor explains the following methods of obtaining a rest for the rifle with the least exposure of the body while aiming:

Take post preferably behind the right of walls, rocks, heaps of stone or earth, and in the windows and doorways of the houses on the left side of a street; behind a tree, rest the rifle on a limb to the right, or rest the forearm against the right side of the trunk.

Behind embankments of earth, in ditches and furrows, kneel or lie down and rise slightly to fire; lie down in rear of a crest or the edge of a plateau, keeping the slope toward the enemy in view.

At the edge of a wood, where there is no ditch nor bank of

Digitized by Google

earth, remain a little back from the edge, under cover of the first trees.

The instructor explains how to prepare the crest of a wall for defensive purposes and how to prepare loopholes or construct platforms when the wall is too high to fire over.

85. A well-instructed soldier or noncommissioned officer is then placed in the position of the enemy and required to advance upon the skirmishers; the latter will carefully observe his movements and aim at him whenever he exposes himself; adjusting the sight to agree with the distance.

86. After a few such exercises, recruits are practiced individually in advancing on positions indicated for an enemy, with instructions to halt at places selected by themselves where cover offers, and execute simulated firing, a few shots at each place, then continue to further cover, and fire.

Before advance is begun, the recruit will be instructed that in going from one point of cover to another he may deviate somewhat from the direction to take advantage of chance cover or screen, but must resume the direction on advancing. In order to keep out of sight of the enemy he may stoop, or even creep or crawl.

87. It must be borne in mind that the object of these exercises is to give the soldier the knowledge necessary to grasp the advantages of the ground at a glance.

Digitized by Google

SCHOOL OF THE SQUAD.

88. Soldiers are grouped into squads for purposes of discipline, control and order in quarters and camp, at drill, on the march and in battle.

89. The squad proper consists of a corporal and seven privates. The corporal is the squad leader and when absent is replaced by a designated private. If no private is designated the senior in length of service acts as leader.

90. Men are taught the necessity of remaining with their squad and, in case their own squad is broken up or they are unavoidably separated therefrom, to place themselves under the nearest leader and to remain with his squad as if it were the one to which they originally belonged.

91. In battle, officers and sergeants endeavor to preserve the integrity of squads; they designate new leaders to replace those disabled, organize new squads when necessary, and see that every man is placed in a squad.

92. The corporal when in ranks is posted as the left man in the front rank of the squad. When the corporal leaves the ranks, his rear rank man steps into the front rank and the file remains blank until the corporal returns to his place in ranks, when his rear rank man steps back into the rear rank.

CLOSE ORDER.

93. When the recruits have received a few preliminary lessons in the School of the Soldier, they are divided into groups of eight, thus forming temporary squads.

These squads are placed under corporals, who, under the supervision of sergeants and officers, gain the necessary experience to qualify them as squad leaders, while teaching the recruits the movements in close and extended order.

To Size and Form the Squad.

94. The instructor arranges the men according to height in column at facing distance, tallest man in front, and commands: 1. *In two ranks form squad*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***FRONT.***

At the command *march*, the first man faces to the left; the second man places himself in the rear rank covering the first at a

Digitized by Google

distance of forty inches; both place the left hand upon the hip; the other men close in quick time, and form alternately in front and rear rank, as explained for the first two, each man facing to the left upon arriving at his proper place, then dressing to the right.

All the men having formed, the instructor commands: ***FRONT.*** Each man turns his head and eyes to the front and drops his left hand by the side.

The squad having been sized, the men are cautioned to take the same relative positions when the squad is formed thereafter. These positions are frequently changed at drill for purposes of instruction.

95. To form the squad, the corporal places himself three paces in front of where the center is to be formed, and commands: ***FALL IN.***

The men assemble at attention in their proper places in double rank, arms at the order, each man dropping his left hand as soon as the man on his left has his interval.

The instructor then commands: ***COUNT OFF.***

At this command, all except the right file execute *eyes right* and beginning on the right the men in each rank count *one, two, three, four;* each man turns his head and eyes to the front as he counts.

The instructor next commands: 1. *Port*, 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. *Open*, 4. ***CHAMBER,*** 5. *Close*, 6. ***CHAMBER.***

In case the examination reveals the presence of cartridges, the soldier removes them without further instruction.

Alignments.

96. The alignments are first taught by requiring the recruits to align themselves upon two files established as a base.

Being at a halt: 1. *Two files from the right (left) three paces to the front*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command *march*, the first two files on the right march three paces to the front, halt, execute *eyes right*, and place the palm of the left hand upon the hip whether dressing to the right or left; the instructor aligns them, sees that the rear rank men cover their file leaders, and then commands: 1. *Right (Left)*, 2. ***DRESS,*** 3. ***FRONT.*** At the command *dress*, the remaining files march to the front, each man shortening the last step so as to find himself about six inches in rear of the new alignment, which must never be passed; he then executes *eyes right*, places the left hand upon the hip whether dressing to the right

Digitized by Google

or left, and taking steps of two or three inches, moves up, places his right arm lightly against the arm of the man on his right, so that his eyes and shoulders are in line with those of the men on his right. The instructor verifies the alignment of both ranks from the right flank and orders up or back such men as may be in rear or in advance of the line; only the men designated move.

At the command *front*, given when the ranks are aligned, each man turns his head and eyes to the front and drops his left hand by the side. *This rule is general.*

97. In the first drills the basis of the alignment is established parallel to the front of the squad; afterward, in oblique directions.

98. The recruits having learned to align themselves, the instructor establishes the base file and then aligns the squad by the commands: 1. *Right* (*Left*), 2. ***DRESS***, 3. ***FRONT.***

At the command *dress*, all the men except the base file move forward and dress as previously explained, the rear rank men being careful to cover in file.

99. Alignments to the rear are executed on the same principles: 1. *Right* (*Left*) *backward*, 2. ***DRESS***, 3. ***FRONT.***

The men step back, halt a little in rear of the line and immediately dress up by steps of two or three inches.

100. To execute the alignments, using the side step, the instructor establishes the base file a few paces to the right or left of the squad and commands: 1. *Right* (*Left*) *step*, 2. (*Right or Left*), 3. ***DRESS***, 4. ***FRONT.***

At the command *dress*, the men execute the side step, close toward the base file and dress as already explained.

To Take Intervals.

101. Being in line at a halt: 1. *To the right* (*left*) *take intervals*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Squad*, 4. ***HALT.***

At the first command, the rear rank steps back to four paces distance from the front rank; at the command *march*, all face to the right and the leading man of each rank steps off; the other men step off in succession so as to follow the preceding man at four paces.

At the command *halt*, given when all have their intervals, all halt and face to the front.

To Assemble.

1. *To the right* (*left*) *assemble*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The front rank man on the right stands fast, the rear rank man

Digitized by Google

on the right closes to forty inches. The other men face to the right, close by the shortest line and face to the front.

To Take Distances.

102. Being in line at a halt and having counted off:

1. *Front take distance*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Squad*, 4. ***HALT***.

At the command *march*, number one of the front rank moves straight to the front; numbers two, three and four of the front rank and numbers one, two, three and four of the rear rank, move in the order named straight to the front, each stepping off so as to follow the preceding man at four paces. The command halt is given when all have their distances.

In case more than one squad is in line, each squad executes the movement as above and each rank of numbers guides on its right number.

To Assemble.

1. *Assemble*, 2. ***MARCH***.

Number one of the front rank stands fast; the other numbers move forward to their proper places in line.

MARCHINGS.

103. When the guide is announced in the command, the man on the designated flank conducts the march, but in no other respect acts as the guide.

To March in Line.

104. Being in line at a halt. 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide (right or left)*, 3. ***MARCH***.

The men step off, the guide marching straight to the front; the rear rank men cover their file leaders.

The instructor sees that the ranks preserve the alignment and the intervals toward the side of the guide. The men yield to pressure from that side and resist pressure from the opposite direction; by slightly shortening or lengthening the step they gradually recover the alignment, and by slightly opening out or closing in they gradually recover the interval, if lost; while habitually keeping the head to the front, they may occasionally glance toward the side of the guide to assure themselves of the alignment and interval, but the head is turned as little as possible for this purpose.

To change the guide: *Guide (left or right)*.

Digitized by Google

To March Backward.

105. Being at a halt: 1. *Backward*, 2. *Guide* (*right* or *left*), 3. ***MARCH.***

To March to the Rear.

106. Being in march: 1. *To the rear*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

To March Faced to the Flank.

107. Being in line at a halt: 1. *Right* (*Left*), 2. ***FACE,*** 3. *Forward*, 4. ***MARCH.***

If marching: 1. *By the right* (*left*) *flank*, 2, ***MARCH.***

The leading man of the front rank is the guide. His rear rank man marches abreast of him, preserving an interval of thirty inches. The other men follow at facing distance.

To halt the squad: 1. *Squad*, 2. ***HALT;*** and to face the front: 3. *Left* (*Right*), 4. ***FACE;*** or, to march again to the front without halting: 1. *By the left* (*right*) *flank*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

The Squad may be marched to the flank in a similar manner, first causing the rear rank to close to facing distance. On facing or marching to the front the rear rank falls back to or gains its distance of forty inches. The squad marching by the flank in this manner changes direction as in paragraph 195.

The Oblique March.

108. For the instruction of recruits, the squad being correctly aligned, the instructor causes the squad to face half right or half left, points out to the men their relative positions, and explains that these are to be maintained in the oblique march.

109. Being in line: 1. *Right* (*Left*) *oblique*, 2. ***MARCH.***

Each man steps off in a direction forty-five degrees to the right of his original front. He preserves his relative position, keeping his shoulders parallel to those of the man next on his right, and so regulates his steps as to make the ranks remain paralled to their original front.

The rear rank conforms to the foregoing, each man marching so as to cover his file leader upon resuming the original direction.

At the command *halt*, the men halt faced to the front.

To resume the original direction: 1. *Forward*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

The men half face to the left in marching and then move traight to the front.

Digitized by Google

At *half step* or *mark time* while obliquing, the oblique march is resumed by the commands: 1. *Full step*, 2. ***MARCH.***

110. In the oblique march, the guide is, without indication, always on the side toward which the oblique is made. On resuming the direct march in line, the guide is announced.

These rules are general.

111. The column of files obliques by the same commands and means.

To March in Double Time.

112. Being in line at a halt: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide* (*right* or *left*), 3. *Double time*, 4. ***MARCH.***

To Pass from Quick to Double Time and the Reverse.

113. 1. *Double time*, 2 ***MARCH.***

To resume quick time: 1. *Quick time*, 2. ***MARCH.***

Being in Line, to March in Column of Twos or Files.

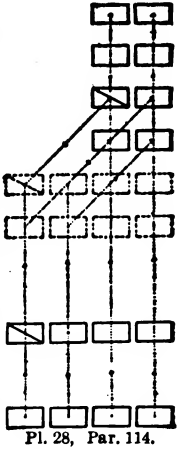
114. These movements are used chiefly when the squad is part of a larger organization, as the company, to reduce the front in order to pass a defile; the original formation is resumed as soon as the defile is passed, and in such manner as not to invert the numbers of the squad.

1. *Right* (*Left*) *by twos*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the first command, the rear rank closes to facing distance, increasing the length of step if in march. At the command *march*, the two files on the right move forward; the two files on the left mark time till disengaged, when they oblique to the right in full step and follow the two files on the right at facing distance.

1. *Right* (*Left*) *by file*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the first command, the rear rank closes to facing distance, increasing the length of step if in march. At the command *march*, all files except the right mark time till successively disengaged, when they oblique to the right in full step and follow the preceding file at a facing distance.



Pl. 28, Par. 114.

Column of files from column of twos is similarly executed.

Digitized by Google

Being in Column of Twos or Files, to March in Line to the Front.

115. 1. *Left (Right) front into line*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH.***

At the second command, the leading two files take the half step; the rear two, at full step, oblique to the left till uncovered, move up abreast of the leading two files, and take the half step.

At the fourth command, given when the left files are in line, the front rank takes the full step and is followed by the rear rank at its proper distance.

If in column of files, at the second command, the leading file takes the half step; the other files oblique to the left till uncovered, move up abreast of the leading file and take the half step; the rear rank men gain the distance of forty inches from the front rank as soon as practicable.

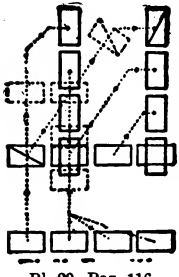
The fourth command is given when the last file is in line.

Column of twos from column of files is formed in a similar manner; the word *Twos* precedes the commands; the rear rank remains at facing distance.

TURNINGS.

To Turn on Fixed Pivot.

116. 1. *Squad right (left)*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Squad*, 4 ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide (right* or *left)*.



Pl. 29, Par. 116.

At the second command, the pivot man marks time turning to the right in his place; the other front rank men, by twice obliquing to the right, place themselves abreast of the pivot and mark time. The rear rank does not turn as a rank; the men conform to the movement of the front rank, place themselves covering their file leaders at a distance of forty inches and mark time. The fourth command is given when the last man arrives in his new position.

The turn on fixed pivot is used in all formations from line into column and the reverse.

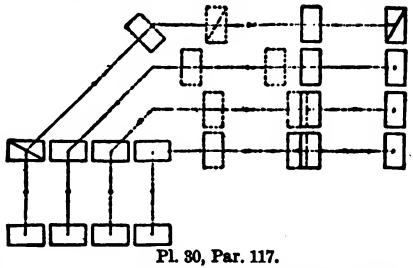
To Turn on Moving Pivot.

117. Marching in line: 1. *Right (Left) turn*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide (right* or *left)*.

At the second command, the pivot man, who is the guide during the movement, faces to the right in marching and takes the

Digitized by Google

half step; the other front rank men oblique to the right until opposite their places in line, execute a second right oblique and take the half step on arriving abreast of the pivot man. The rear rank advances and turns on the same ground and in the same manner as the front rank, maintaining the distance of forty inches. All take the full step at the fourth command, which is given when the last man arrives in his new position.



Pl. 30, Par. 117.

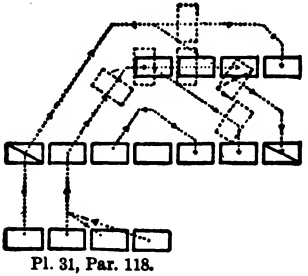
The movement is executed from a halt in the same manner. At the second command, the pivot man faces to the right as in marching and steps off at half step.

Right (Left) half turn is executed in a similar manner. The pivot man makes a half change of direction to the right and the other men make quarter changes in obliquing.

The turn on moving pivot is used by subdivisions of a column in executing changes of direction.

The About.

118. 1. *Squad right (left) about*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Squad*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).



Pl. 31, Par. 118.

At the second command, the front rank twice executes *squad right;* the man on the marching flank moves at full step and without pause to his position; the others mark time in the midway position until the man on the marching flank is abreast of them, and then execute the second *squad right.* The rear rank men move to their new positions by twice executing without pause what is prescribed for them in the turn on fixed pivot.

The fourth command is given when the last man is in

TO STACK AND TAKE ARMS.

119. Three pieces only are used to make a stack; pieces not so used are, in this connection, termed *loose pieces*. Pieces provided with stacking swivel are never stacked with the bayonet fixed.

Being in line at order arms: 1. *Stack*, 2. ***ARMS.***

At the command *stack*, each even number of the front rank raises his piece with the right hand, grasps it with the left at the upper band and rests the butt between his feet, barrel to the front, muzzle inclined slightly to the front and opposite the center of the interval on his right, the thumb and forefinger raising the stacking swivel; each even number of the rear rank then passes his piece, barrel to the rear, to his file leader, who grasps it between the bands with his right hand and throws the butt about twenty-six inches in advance of that of his own piece and opposite the right of the interval, the right hand slipping to the upper band, the thumb and forefinger raising the stacking swivel, which he engages with that of his own piece; each odd number of the front rank raises his piece with the right hand, carries it well forward, barrel to the front, the left hand, guiding the stacking swivel, engages the lower hook of the swivel of his own piece with the free hook of that of the even number of the rear rank; he then turns the barrel outward into the angle formed by the other two pieces and holds the butt about four inches above the ground and six inches in front of the line of the toes.

At the command *arms*, each odd number of the front rank carries the butt of his piece up and to the front with a circular motion, so as to avoid injuring the sight, and lowers the butt to the ground, to the right of and against the toe of his right shoe.

The stacks made, the loose pieces are laid on them by the even numbers of the front rank.

When each man has finished handling pieces, he takes the position of the soldier.

The instructor may then rest or dismiss the squad, leaving the arms stacked.

On assembling, the men take their places in rear of the stacks.

1. *Take*, 2. ***ARMS.***

At the command take, the loose pieces are returned by the even numbers of the front rank; each even number of the front rank then grasps his own piece with the left hand, the piece of his rear rank man with his right hand, grasping both between the bands;

each odd number of the front rank grasps his piece in the same way with the right hand.

At the command *arms*, each odd number of the front rank disengages his own piece by raising the butt from the ground and then turning the piece to the right, detaching the piece from the stack; each even number of the front rank disengages and detaches his piece by turning it to the left, and then passes the piece of his rear rank man to him, and all resume the order.

Unless care is taken by the odd number to carry the butt in the circular manner described there is danger that the front sight will be caught and bent by the rod bayonet of the piece of the even number on turning the piece to make or break the stack.

Should any squad have numbers two and three blank files, number one rear rank takes the place of number two rear rank in making and breaking the stack; the stacks made or broken, he resumes his post.

120. Being in single rank, arms are stacked and taken on the same principles as in double rank; at the preparatory command, number three steps back and covers number two; numbers two and three execute what has been explained for the even numbers of the front and rear rank, respectively; number three then resumes his place; number one uses his piece as explained for the odd number of the front rank.

POSITIONS KNEELING AND LYING DOWN.

121. Being at order arms: ***KNEEL.***

All half face to the right, carry the right toe about ten inches to the rear and ten inches to the left of the left heel; kneel on right knee, bending the left, left toe slightly inclined to the right, right leg pointing directly to the right; weight of body resting on right heel; place left forearm across left thigh, hand hanging naturally; the piece remains in the position of order arms, right hand grasping it above the lower band. *This is the position of order kneeling.*

Pl. 32, Par.

122. Being at the order kneeling: ***RISE.***

Rise and take the position of order arms.

123. Being at the order kneeling: ***LIE DOWN.***

Place the right knee against the left heel. (***TWO***) Draw back the left foot and place the knee on the ground; place the left hand well forward on the ground and lie flat on the belly, thus in

the body about thirty-five degrees to the right; the piece is lowered at the same time with the right hand, toe resting on the ground, barrel up, muzzle off the ground, left hand at the balance, left elbow on the ground, right hand at the small of the stock opposite the neck. *This is the position lying down.*

Pl. 33, Par. 123.

124. Being in the position lying down: ***KNEEL.***

Place the left hand on the ground and raise the body on the knees; draw up and place the left foot by the side of the right knee, raise and place the piece in the position of the order kneeling. (***TWO***) Take the position of order kneeling.

125. Being at order arms: ***LIE DOWN.***

Take the position of order kneeling, except that the right knee is placed against the left heel. (***TWO***) Draw back the left foot and place the knee on the ground; place the left hand well forward on the ground and lie flat on the belly, thus inclining the body about thirty-five degrees to the right; the piece is lowered at the same time with the right hand, toe resting on the ground, barrel up, muzzle off the ground, left hand at the balance, left elbow on the ground, right hand at the small of the stock opposite the neck.

126. Being in the position lying down: ***RISE.***

Place the left hand on the ground and raise the body on the knees; draw up and place the left foot by the side of the right knee, raise and place the piece in the position of the order kneeling. (***TWO***) Rise and take the position of order arms.

Pl. 34, Par. 127.

127. If unarmed the movements kneeling, lying down and rising, are executed as with arms, except that in the position kneeling the right hand rests on the right thigh, and in moving to and from the lying position the right hand is placed on the ground; in the position lying down the forearms are against each other on the ground, left arm in front.

Digitized by Google

128. In extended order the soldier kneels, lies down and returns to the kneeling and standing positions in the most convenient manner.

INSPECTION OF ARMS.

129. The instructor dresses the rear rank back to three paces distance from the front rank and commands: 1. *Inspection*, 2. ***ARMS.***

At the second command, cartridge boxes are opened if worn.

Each man as the inspector approaches him executes *port arms* and *open chamber.*

The inspector takes the piece, grasping it with his right hand just above the rear sight (the man dropping the hands by the sides), inspects it, and, with the hand and piece in the same position as in receiving it, hands it back to the man, who takes it with the left hand at the balance, executes *close chamber* and *order arms.*

As the inspector returns the piece, the next man executes *port arms* and *open chamber*, and so on through the squad.

Should the piece be inspected without handling, the man executes *close chamber* and *order arms* as soon as the inspector has passed the next man.

The inspection of arms is from right to left and the inspector examines the boxes as he passes in rear of the rank from left to right.

Each box is closed as soon as inspected.

Upon completion of the inspection the instructor dresses the rear rank to its proper distance.

LOADINGS AND FIRINGS.a

General Rules.

130. The post of the instructor is three paces in rear of the squad, but in actual firing he places himself where he can best make himself heard and at the same time observe the effect of the fire. The objective should be in plain view and so designated as to be easily distinguished by all.

131. The commands for loading, aiming and firing are the same in close and extended order and whether the squad is standing, kneeling or lying down. In close order the command for kneeling or lying down precedes the command for firing.

After fire is opened upon any designated objective the designation of objective is omitted from commands until it is desired

a The education of the soldier in musketry is not treated of in these, but in Firing Regulations for Small Arms.

Digitized by Google

to fire upon another objective; troops are trained to continue their fire upon a designated objective until the designation is changed.

132. When kneeling or lying down in close order the rear rank does not execute the loadings, aimings or firings.

133. The recruits are first taught the motions of loading and firing without using cartridges; after a few lessons they should use dummy cartridges, and when well instructed, the drill may close with a few rounds of blank cartridges.

134. Cartridges are not used unless the words *With dummy (blank* or *ball) cartridges* precede the command ***LOAD.***

135. At the first preparatory command for firing, the squad being in line standing, pieces loaded or supposed to be so, both ranks take the position of load; the cartridge box, if worn, is slipped to the hip and opened; at the command indicating the distance, the sights are adjusted; the cartridge box is closed and replaced after executing *cease firing.*

136. The command or signal *cease firing* is always used to stop the firing, and may be given at any time after the preparatory command for firing, whether the firing has actually commenced or not.

137. The piece is always locked (turned to the "safe") after executing *cease firing.*

To Load.

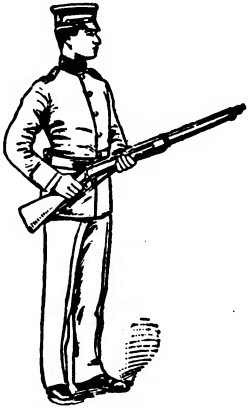
138. Being in line at order arms: 1. *Squad,* 2. ***LOAD.***

At the command *load*, each front rank man makes a half face to the right and plants the right foot so that the heel is about six inches to the rear and two inches to the right of the left heel, the feet making with each other an angle of about seventy degrees; each rear rank man moves forward, plants his left toe near the right toe of his file leader and brings the right foot to its corresponding position as described for the front rank; the men of both ranks raise the piece with the right hand and drop it into the left at the balance, left thumb extended along the stock, muzzle at the height of the breast, turn the safety lock up and grasp the bolt handle with the thumb and forefinger of the right hand. (***TWO***) With the right hand turn and draw the bolt back, take a loaded clip and insert the end in the clip slots, place the thumb on the powder space of the top cartridge, the fingers extending around the piece and tips resting on the magazine floor plate, force the cartridges into the magazine by pressing down with the thumb; without removing the clip, place

Digitized by Google

palm of the hand against the back of the bolt handle and thrust the bolt home with a quick motion turning down the handle; turn the safety lock to the "safe" and carry the hand to the

Pl. 35, Par. 138.



Pl. 36, Par. 138.

small of the stock. *This position is designated for reference as that of load standing.*

If kneeling, the position of the piece is similar, the left forearm resting on the left thigh.

If lying down, the left hand steadies and supports the piece at the balance, the toe of the butt resting on the ground, the muzzle off the ground.

To Fire by Volley.

139. The pieces being loaded and in any position: 1. *At (so many) yards*, 2. *At (such object)*, 3. ***READY***, 4. ***AIM***, 5. *Squad*, 6. ***FIRE.***

At the first command, take the position of *load*, if not already there, and set the sight to the elevation designated; at the command *ready*, turn the safety lock to the "ready;" at the command *aim*, raise the piece with both hands and support the butt firmly against the hollow of the right shoulder, right thumb inclined forward and diagonally to the left across the stock, barrel hori-

zontal, left elbow well under the piece, right elbow as high as the shoulder; incline the head slightly forward and a little to

Pl. 37, Par. 139.

Pl. 38, Par. 139.

Pl. 39, Par. 139.

the right, cheek against the stock, left eye closed, right eye looking through the notch of the rear sight so as to perceive the top of the front sight and object aimed at, second joint of forefinger resting lightly against the front of the trigger, but not pressing it.

Each rear rank man aims through the interval to the right of his file leader, and leans slightly forward to advance the muzzle of his piece beyond the front rank.

In aiming kneeling, the left elbow rests on the left knee, point of elbow in front of kneecap.

In aiming lying down, raise the piece with both hands; rest on h elbows and press the butt firmly against the right shoulder.

At the command *fire*, press the finger against the trigger; fire without deranging the aim, and without lowering or turning the piece.

140. To continue the firing: 1. ***LOAD,*** 2. ***AIM,*** 3. *Squad*, 4. ***FIRE.***

Each command is executed as previously explained except *load*, which is executed by lowering the piece from the shoulder, drawing back and thrusting home the bolt with the right hand, leaving the safety lock at the "ready."

Should the magazine become exhausted, *load* is executed with a new clip.

To Fire at Will.

141. 1. *Fire at will*, 2. *At (so many) yards*, 3. *At (such object)*, 4. ***COMMENCE FIRING.***

At the command *commence firing*, each man, independently of the others, comes to the *ready*, takes careful aim at the object, fires, loads, and continues the fire, aiming deliberately and conducting his fire with all the care required on the rifle range.

Fire at will having been interrupted by the command *cease firing*, may be resumed at the same range and objective by the command: ***COMMENCE FIRING.***

To Fire with Counted Cartridges.

142. 1. *Fire three (or other number) rounds*, 2. *At (so many) yards*, 3. *At (such object)*, 4. ***COMMENCE FIRING.***

Executed as in the preceding paragraph with the exception that on completion of the prescribed number of rounds each soldier executes *cease firing.*

Other rounds may be fired at the same range and objective by the command: 1. *Fire two (or other number) rounds*, 2. ***COMMENCE FIRING.***

Rapid Fire.

143. This fire is used only when preparing for or resisting a charge. 1. *Rapid fire*, 2. ***COMMENCE FIRING.***

The bayonets are fixed, the sights are set at point blank and the firing is executed as rapidly as consistent with effective aiming.

Owing to heat caused by continued firing, the barrel of the piece and metal parts in front of the chamber soon become too hot for handling; care should then be exercised to confine handling to the wooden parts and the metal parts in rear of the chamber.

Digitized by Google

144. ***CEASE FIRING.***

The firing stops; pieces not already there are brought to the position of load, those not loaded are loaded, and all pieces locked.

This is intended to interrupt the firing, for the purpose of steadying the men, to change to another method of firing, or to retain the pieces loaded.

Having executed *cease firing*: 1. *Order*, 2. ***ARMS.***

To Unload.

145. Being in any position: ***UNLOAD.***

All take the position of load, turn the safety lock up and alternately open and close the chamber until all the cartridges are ejected. After the last cartridge is ejected the chamber is closed by first thrusting the bolt slightly forward to free it from the stud holding it in place when the chamber is open, pressing the "follower" down and back to engage it under the bolt and then thrusting the bolt home; the piece is locked.

The cartridges are then picked up, cleaned and returned to the box or belt and the piece brought to the order.

146. The rifle can be used as a single loader by turning the magazine "off." The magazine can be filled in whole or in part while "off" by pressing cartridges singly down and back until they are properly in place. The use of the rifle as a single loader is, however, to be regarded as exceptional.

The magazine when "on" can be filled in whole or in part without the use of the clip by pressing the cartridges down singly until held in place.

EXTENDED ORDER.

147. The man in front of whom the corporal places himself (No. 2 of the front rank) is the center and the guide of the squad, and follows in the trace of the corporal at a distance of three paces.

148. When the corporal does not wish the guide to follow him, he commands: *Guide center*, and indicates the point of direction; if marching by the flank, he indicates the direction, or, moving abreast of the leading file, conducts the march.

149. Before giving commands for increasing or diminishing intervals, or assembling, the corporal indicates the file who is to be the base. This indication may be made by placing himself three paces in front of such file, or by oral designation.

On halting, the corporal places himself three paces in rear of is squad if it is acting alone. When the squad is in a line of

Digitized by Google

squads the corporal is three paces in front whether marching or at a halt, and if deployed as skirmishers he is the left skirmisher.

150. The deployment as skirmishers is made on the front rank man of the second file.

The rear rank men place themselves on the alignment to the right of their file leaders, each, when there is interval.

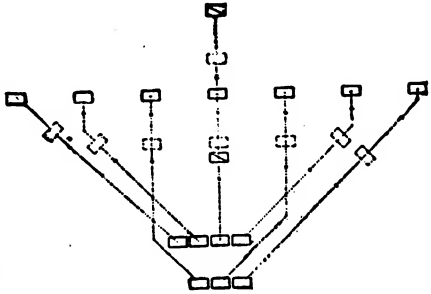
To Deploy as Skirmishers.

151. Forward:

Marching in line: 1. *As skirmishers*, 2. ***MARCH.***

Number two of the front rank moves straight to the front unless the corporal has indicated another direction, in which case he moves in such direction.

The other men oblique to the right or left according as they are on the right or left of the second file, increasing the gait, each, when at his interval and on the alignment, resuming the direction and gait of the guide.



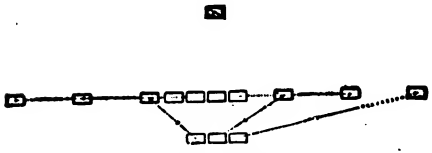
Pl. 40, Par. 151.

When the squad arrives on the line to be occupied, the corporal halts it by the commands: 1. *Skirmishers*, 2. ***HALT.***

152. By the flank:

Being at a halt: 1. *As skirmishers*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The base stands fast; the other men move rapidly to the right or left, according as they are on his right or left, each man halting on the line when he has gained his interval.



Pl. 41, Par. 152.

153. The squad in any formation can be deployed as skirmishers and moved in a

Digitized by Google

direction by the corporal moving in the desired direction and commanding: 1. *As skirmishers*, 2. ***MARCH;*** or, if practicable, the direction may be indicated in the preparatory command: 1. *As skirmishers to the right* (*right front, rear*, etc.). Number two front rank follows the corporal, or moves in the indicated direction; all others take their positions on the line, moving by the shortest route and in the most expeditious manner.

To Increase or Diminish Intervals.

154. Being deployed as skirmishers: 1. *To* (*so many*) *paces extend* (or *close*), 2. ***MARCH.***

The skirmishers open from or close toward the base.

If marching, the movement is executed by obliquing and increasing the gait; if at a halt, the movement is executed by the flank.

To Rally.

155. The rally, used when there is not time to form in normal order, should be made either on the line or in advance of it.

The corporal commands: ***RALLY.***

The men run toward the corporal and group themselves in single or double rank, in line, in circle, in semicircle, or in such other formation as he directs, and then fix bayonet.

If the corporal continues to advance, the men form in rear of him in single or double rank as he directs and follow him fixing bayonet.

The squad being rallied may advance or deploy; in deploying, the skirmishers return to their former places and unfix bayonet.

The Assembly.

156. Being deployed or rallied: 1. *Assemble*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The men move toward the corporal and form in their proper places.

If the corporal continues to advance, the men move in double time, form, and follow him.

Assembling when faced or marching to the rear is not executed.

Normal Attack.

157. The corporal designates some well-defined object, as a tree, house or target, that can be seen and recognized by all, distant about twelve hundred yards.

He then causes the squad to load, puts it in march, deploys it as skirmishers, places himself about three paces in front of the

guide, and halts at one thousand yards from the objective; other halts are made at every fifty yards until he reaches a point two hundred yards from the objective.

At each halt the corporal halts in person, and commands: 1, *Skirmishers*, 2. ***HALT.***

The skirmishers halt abreast of the corporal, who steps aside to clear the guide who has been following in his trace, falls back to his place in rear and gives the commands for firing; one round at the first four halts, two rounds at the next four halts, and *fire at will* at the remaining halts until the last halt is reached when the *rapid fire* is delivered and the squad follows the corporal in the charge.

The advance is made in quick time until within eight hundred yards when the double time is used.

To correct errors, the company officer present frequently stays the execution of this drill; he sees that the men obey the restrictions against using cartridges unless specified in the command, lock pieces at completion of loading, *adjust the sights at the designated elevation, aim carefully and fire deliberately.*

The commands of the corporal at the first four halts are: 1. *Fire one round*, 2. *At one thousand (nine hundred and fifty, nine hundred, eight hundred and fifty) yards*, 3, ***COMMENCE FIRING;*** 4. ***CEASE FIRING;*** at the next four halts they are similar, substituting *two rounds* for *one round* and changing the elevation to correspond with the range; at the next eight halts the first command is: *Fire at will;* at the last halt the command is: 1. *Rapid fire*, 2. ***COMMENCE FIRING.***

Instruction on Varied Ground.

158. When the squad is fairly proficient in the normal attack, two or more instructed soldiers are used to outline an enemy, furnished with blank cartridges and instructed to fire upon the skirmishers whenever they are passing over or occupying exposed ground.

The company officer present posts these instructed men, takes the squad over the ground to be crossed, indicates the halting places, returns with the squad to the starting point twelve hundred yards or more distant, and directs the corporal to make the attack.

This is carried out in the same manner as before except that, the halts being made with a view to effective fire upon the objective, the distances passed over between halts are variable.

The men are halted in the charge just before reaching

objective; or pass through the opposing line, each man passing to the right of the man in his front.

The Defense.

159. The instructor next causes the same drill to be repeated by two squads, both squads using blank cartridges and alternating in attack and defense.

The squad acting on the defensive so occupies a selected position as to be sheltered by natural cover, or constructs the necessary artificial cover.*a* The other squad attacks and the squad acting on the defensive takes advantage of all favorable opportunities for delivering an effective fire upon the attacking squad; the men quickly rise from behind their cover sufficiently to see the objective and fire effectively; the corporal gives and the men use the proper elevation.

160. The different drills as outlined above, carried out on different portions of the available ground and in different directions over the same ground, are continued until the recruit is sufficiently advanced to receive instruction in the School of the Company.

---

*a*The principles of preparation of cover are found in the authorized Manual of Field Engineering.

Digitized by Google

SCHOOL OF THE COMPANY.

CLOSE ORDER.

161. The company is divided into two platoons, the division falling between squads; each platoon, into two sections; two or three squads form a section under a sergeant as chief.

When the company consists of an odd number of squads, the right platoon is the stronger; when less than four squads are present, the division into platoons is omitted; when a platoon consists of an odd number of squads, the right section is the stronger; when a platoon consists of less than four squads, the division into sections is omitted.

At the formation of the company, the platoons, sections, and squads are numbered consecutively from right to left; these designations are permanent and do not change when, by any movement, the right becomes the left of the line, or the head becomes the rear of the column.

For convenience in giving commands and for reference, the additional designations *right*, *left*, when in line, *leading*, *rear*, when in column, are applied to platoons; *right*, *center*, *left*, when in line, *leading*, *center*, *rear*, when in column, are applied to squads; the designation "Corporal———'s squad" may also be used; the center squad is the original left squad of the first platoon; the designations right, left, leading, rear, apply to the actual right or left, head or rear, in whatever direction the company is facing.

Posts of Officers, Noncommissioned Officers, and Musicians, in Line.

162. The captain is three paces in front of the center of the company.

The first lieutenant is chief of the first platoon and is two paces in rear of its center.

The second lieutenant is chief of the second platoon and is two paces in rear of its center.

When there is a third lieutenant he is posted on the left of the second lieutenant.

The first sergeant is two paces in rear of the second file from the right of the first platoon; he is not attached to a section.

Digitized by Google

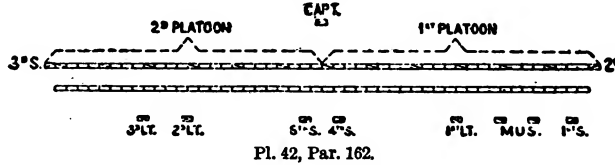
The quartermaster sergeant is posted according to his rank as a sergeant.

The second sergeant is in the front rank on the right of the first platoon; he is the right guide of this platoon and also of the company, and chief of the first section.

The third sergeant is in the front rank, on the left of the second platoon; he is the left guide of this platoon and also of the company, and chief of the fourth section.

The fourth sergeant is two paces in rear of the second file from the left of the first platoon; he is the left guide of the first platoon, and chief of the second section.

The fifth sergeant is two paces in rear of the second file from the right of the second platoon; he is the right guide of the second platoon, and chief of the third section.



Pl. 42, Par. 162.

If other sergeants or the cooks are present, they are distributed in the line of file closers.

The artificer is assigned to a squad as if he were a private.

The musicians, when not united in the battalion, are in the line of file closers, on the right of the first lieutenant, and conform to the movements of the file closers. On the march, when required to play, they march at the head of the column.

Absent officers and noncommissioned officers are generally replaced by the next in rank.

Instruction of Officers and Noncommissioned Officers.

163. The captain is held responsible for the theoretical and practical instruction of his officers and noncommissioned officers. When instruction is not otherwise provided for by Army Regulations and General Orders, he requires the officers to study and recite these regulations so that they can explain thoroughly every movement; the noncommissioned officers, those movements up to and including the School of the Company and the duties of guides in the School of the Battalion.

The captain requires the lieutenants to act as instructors at

Digitized by Google

drill sufficiently often to assure them opportunity to attain proficiency in command of a company.

He also requires the sergeants to act occasionally as platoon commanders, and if time admits, he may require the sergeants to drill the company under his immediate supervision, noncommissioned officers acting as platoon commanders.

To Size the Company.

164. The first sergeant arranges the privates as in paragraph 94; the corporals place themselves according to height, the tallest as the seventh man, the others as every eighth man in rear.

The first sergeant commands: 1. *In two ranks form company*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The movement is completed as in paragraph 94.

The first sergeant then commands: 1. ***COUNT OFF.*** The squads successively count off as in the School of the Squad.

If the squad on the left consists of less than four men, they are assigned to other squads and placed in the line of file closers, each in rear of the squad to which assigned; if the left squad consists of four or five men, the number is increased to six or seven by taking the required number of men from other squads, one man from each, number three, or numbers two and three being blank files.

The sergeants take their posts.

The company is then divided into platoons and sections, which with squads, are given their numerical designations.

The company being sized, the squads habitually form in the same order.

To Form the Company.

165. In all formations the men fall in at attention; at the order of under arms.

At the sounding of the *assembly*, the first sergeant takes his position six paces in front of where the center of the company is to be, and facing it, makes the signal for assembly, or commands: ***FALL IN.***

The second sergeant places himself, facing to the front, where the right of the company is to rest, and at such a point that the center of the company will be six paces from and opposite the first sergeant; the squads form, facing to the front, in their proper places on the left of the second sergeant, superintended by the other sergeants, who then take their posts.

The first sergeant commands: ***REPORT.*** Remaining in position

at the order, the squad leaders, in succession from the right, salute and report: *All present;* or, *Private(s)* ——— *absent.* The first sergeant does not return the salutes of the squad leaders.

Squads of less than six men are increased or broken up as provided for the left squad.

The first sergeant then brings his piece to the right shoulder, commands: 1. *Port,* 2. ***ARMS.*** 3. *Open,* 4. ***CHAMBER.*** 5. *Close,* 6. ***CHAMBER,*** 7, *Order,* 8. ***ARMS,*** faces about, salutes the captain, reports: *Sir, all present or accounted for;* or, the names of the unauthorized absentees, and without command takes his post, passing around the right flank.

The captain places himself twelve paces in front of the center of and facing the company, in time to receive the report of the first sergeant, whose salute he returns, and then draws saber.

The lieutenants take their posts and draw saber when the first sergeant has reported.

This formation is used in the field and, as far as practicable, in camp and garrison.

166. When the company becomes reduced in numbers and the squads broken up, the men fall in without regard to squads but in their relative order, closing to the right so as to leave no blank files; the corporals place themselves as number four, front rank; the sergeants superintend the formation and take their posts. The first sergeant then brings the company to the right shoulder, retains the order himself, and calls the roll; each man, as his name is called, answers *Here* and comes to the order. The first sergeant brings his piece to the right shoulder, causes the company to count off, forms the left squad, and if the company is large enough, divides it into platoons and sections; he then brings the company to port arms, and the formation continues as explained in the preceding paragraph.

Alignments.

167. The alignments are executed as prescribed in the School of the Squad, the guide being established instead of the base file. The first two or three files are accurately aligned as quickly as possible, to afford a base for the remainder of the company.

At each alignment, the captain, before giving his commands, places himself in prolongation of the line, two paces from and facing the flank toward which the dress is made.

This rule applies to all chiefs of subdivisions in column.

Digitized by Google

In column, whenever a subdivision is dressed, its chief, after commanding *front*, takes his post.

To Open Ranks.

168. Being in line at a halt: 1. *Open ranks*, 2. ***MARCH.*** 3. ***FRONT.***

At the first command, the officers carry saber; the right and left guides step three paces to the rear to mark the new alignment of the rear rank; the first and second lieutenants place themselves on the right and left of the front rank; the third lieutenant covers the second in the rear rank; sabers retained at the carry; the other file closers step back three paces in rear of the line of guides; the captain goes to the right flank and sees that the guides are on a line parallel to the front rank, then places himself facing to the left, three paces in front of and two paces to the right of the company, and commands: ***MARCH;*** at this command the lieutenants move forward three paces, face to the center in marching, and, upon arriving opposite their posts, halt, face to the front and dress to the right; the third lieutenant follows the second (should a noncommissioned officer be chief of platoon, he remains in the line of file closers opposite the center of his platoon); the front rank dresses to the right; the rear rank steps backward, halts a little in rear of the line established by the guides and then dresses to the right on that line; the file closers dress to the right.

The captain aligns the officers and the front rank; the right guide, the rear rank; the captain verifies the alignment of the rear rank and of the file closers; the officers and file closers turn their heads and eyes to the front as soon as their alignment is verified.

At the command *front*, the lieutenants bring their sabers to the order; the guides resume their posts in the front rank; the captain takes post facing to the front, three paces in front of the right guide, and brings his saber to the order.

In opening and closing ranks, guides, file closers and rear rank carry their pieces at a trail while changing their positions.

To Close Ranks.

169. Being at open ranks: 1. *Close ranks*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the first command, the lieutenants carry saber. At the command *march*, they face outward and resume their posts in line, moving parallel to the front of the company; the rear rank closes to forty inches, each man covering his file leader; the file closers close to two paces from the rear rank; the captain takes his post

Digitized by Google

Manual of Arms, etc.

170. The company executes the *halt, rests, facings, setting-up exercises, steps, marchings, manual of arms, loadings* and *firings, takes intervals* and *distances, assembles,* resumes *attention, kneels, lies down, rises, stacks* and *takes arms,* as explained in the Schools of the Soldier and the Squad, substituting in the commands, *company* for *squad.*

The same rule applies to platoons, detachments, details, etc., substituting their designation for *squad* in the commands.

In *taking intervals and distances,* unless otherwise directed, the right and left guides, at the first command, place themselves in the line of file closers, and, with them, take a distance of four paces from the rear rank. In taking intervals, at the command *march,* the file closers face to the flank and step off with the files nearest them.

In *assembling,* the guides and file closers resume their positions in line,

171. In the different firings, at the first command for loading or firing, the captain places himself three paces in rear of the file closers, opposite the center of the company. After the command *cease firing,* the captain returns to his post in line.

Enlisted men in the line of file closers do not execute the loadings or the firings.

Guides and enlisted men in the line of file closers execute the manual of arms during the drill unless specially excused, when they remain at the order. During ceremonies they execute all movements.

A noncommissioned officer as guide, or in command of a company, subdivision, or detachment, carries his piece as the men do.

These rules are general.

To Dismiss the Company.

172. Being in line at a halt, the captain directs the first sergeant: *Dismiss the company,* and returns his salute. The officers fall out; the first sergeant, at the right shoulder, salutes, steps three paces to the front and two paces to the right of the company, faces to the left, and commands: 1. *Port,* 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. *Open,* 4. ***CHAMBER,*** 5. *Close,* 6. ***CHAMBER,*** 7. ***DISMISSED.***

Marching in Line, to Effect a Slight Change of Directions.

173. The captain commands: *Incline to the right* (*left*).

The guide gradually advances the left shoulder and marches in the new direct[illegible]l the files advance the left shoulder and

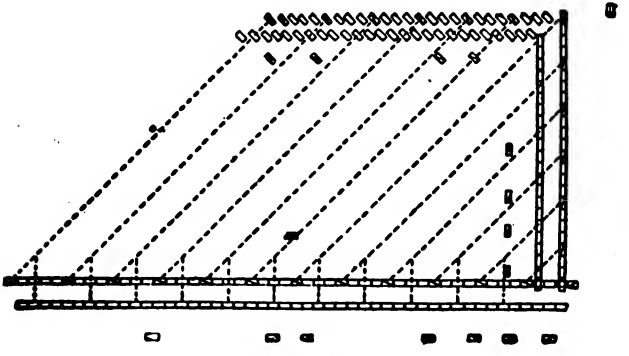
Digitized by Google

conform to the movements of the guide, lengthening or shortening the step, according as the change is toward the side of the guide, or the side opposite.

To Turn on Fixed Pivot.

174. Being in line at a halt; 1. *Company right (left)*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3, *Company*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4, ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide (right* or *left)*.

At the second command, the right guide stands fast; the right front rank man marks time, turning to the right in his place; the



Pl. 43, Par. 174.

other front rank men by twice obliquing to the right place themselves successively abreast of the pivot and mark time; the rear rank men in the right squad conform to the movement as in the School of the Squad; the men on their left advance three paces, then by twice obliquing to the right place themselves successively forty inches in rear of their file leaders and mark time.

At the third command, the right guide places himself on the right of the front rank.

The fourth command is given when the last man arrives in his new position; the command *halt* may be given at any time after the movement begins, only those halt who are in the new position. All align themselves to the right without command.

Being in march, the movement is executed by the same cor-

Digitized by Google

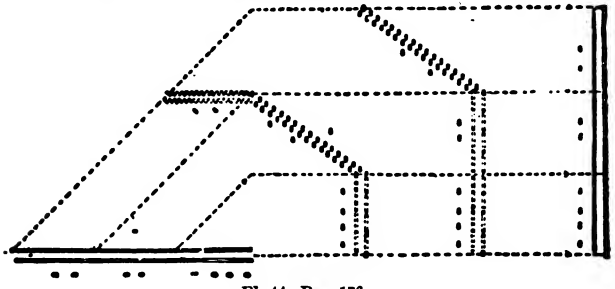
mands and in the same manner; the right guide halts and stands fast at the second command.

175. In the turnings the guide on the pivot flank executes the manual with and carries his piece in the same position as the men in ranks.

This rule is general.

To Turn on Moving Pivot.

176. Marching in line: 1. *Right* (*Left*) *turn*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH***, 5. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).



Pl. 44, Par. 176.

At the second command, the right guide faces to the right in marching and takes the half step; the other front rank men oblique to the right until opposite their places in line, execute a second right oblique and take the half step when abreast of the right guide; the rear rank advances and turns on the same ground and in the same manner as the front rank, maintaining the distance of forty inches. All take the full step at the fourth command, which is given when the last man arrives in his new position.

Being at a halt, the movement is executed by the same commands and in the same manner. At the second command, the right guide faces to the right as in marching and steps off at half step.

Right (*Left*) *half turn* is executed in a similar manner. The right guide makes a half change of direction to the right and the other men make quarter changes in obliquing.

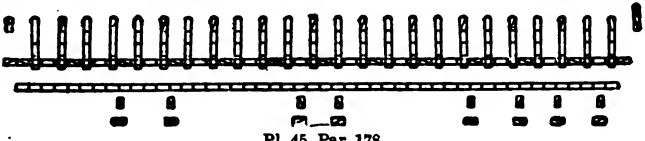
177. The turns on fixed and moving pivots are executed by

Digitized by Google

a platoon, section, detachment, etc., in the same manner as by a company, substituting in the command their designation for *company*.

Being in Line, to Form or March in Column of Squads to the Right or Left.

178. 1. *Squads right (left)*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Company*, 4. ***HALT***; or, 3, *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH***.



Pl. 45, Par. 178.

Each squad executes the right turn on fixed pivot.

The right and left guides place themselves forty inches in front and rear, respectively, of the left file of the leading and rear squads; the file closers close to two paces from flank of column face to the right and maintain their relative positions.

179. When necessary, columns of twos may be marched from line to the right or left by the commands: 1. *Twos right (left)*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3, *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH***.

Executed according to the principles of the preceding paragraph.

At the first command, the rear rank closes to facing distance, which is maintained till line is re-formed to the left by similar commands, or column of squads is formed as provided in paragraph 197. This movement is not executed in double time.

180. The captain, in column of squads, twos, and files, is by the side of the leading guide on the flank opposite the file closers.

The leading and rear guides, in column of squads and twos, are, respectively, in front of the leading file, and in rear of the rear file, on the side opposite the file closers.

Privates and musicians, when in the line of file closers, conform to the movements prescribed for the latter.

In all changes by squads from line into column, column into line, or from column of squads to twos, files, or the reverse, and in all turns about by squads, either in line or column, the guides and file closers take their proper places in the most convenient way as soon as practicable after the command *march*.

In column of squads or twos, the dress is toward the side of the guide.

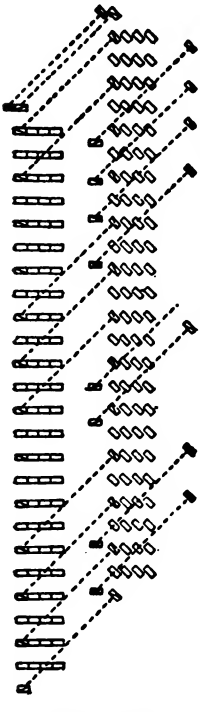
These rules are general,

Digitized by Google

Marching in Column of Squads, to Change Direction.

181. 1. *Column right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH.***

The front rank of the leading squad executes right turn on moving pivot and takes the full step, without command, when the man on the marching flank is abreast of the pivot. The other ranks, without shortening the step, march squarely up to the turning point, execute the right turn on moving pivot on the same ground and in the same manner as the leading rank. The guides and file closers conform to the movement.



Pl. 46, Par. 185.

Column half right (*left*) is similarly executed, each rank making a right half turn on moving pivot.

To Put the Column of Squads in March, and Change Direction at the Same Time.

182. 1. *Forward*, 2. *Column right* (*left*), or, 2. *Column half right* (*left*), 3. ***MARCH.***

Executed as in the preceding paragraph; the pivot of the leading rank faces to the right as in marching and steps off.

Being in Line, to Form Column of Squads and Change Direction.

183. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Full step, column* (*right, half right, left,* or *half left*), 4. ***MARCH.***

Execute *squads right*, and then change direction.

Being in Column of Squads, to Change the File Closers from One Flank to the Other.

184. 1. *File closers on left* (*right*) ***flank,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

At the first command, the file closers close in to the flank of the column, and at the command *march*, dart through the column. The captain and guides change to their proper positions.

To Oblique in Column of Squads, and to Resume the Direct March.

185. 1. *Right* (*Left*) *oblique,* 2, ***MARCH.***

Executed as in the School of the Squad.

Digitized by Google

The leading guide is the guide of the column when the oblique is toward his flank; when the oblique is toward the opposite flank, the guide of the front rank if the leading squad is the guide of the column.

To resume the direct march: 1. *Forward*, 2. ***MARCH.***

To Face or March the Column of Squads to the Rear.

186. 1. *Squads right (left) about*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Company*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH.***

Each squad executes the about; the file closers face about and take their normal positions in column.

To Form Line from Column of Squads.

187. To the right or left: 1. *Squads right (left)*, 2. ***MARCH.*** 3. *Company*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide (right or left)*.

At the second command, each squad executes the turn on fixed pivot.

If the line be formed toward the side of the file closers, they close in to the flank of the column at the first command, and at the second command dart through the column.

188. On right or left: 1. *On right (left) into line*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Company*, 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.*** (Pl. 47.)

At the command *march*, the leading squad executes right turn on moving pivot; each rank takes the full step, without command, when the man on the marching flank is abreast of the pivot; the leading guide places himself on the right of the squad.

Each of the other squads moves forward until opposite its place in the new line, when it changes direction as explained for the leading squad; the rear guide takes his place on the left when the rear squad arrives on the line.

At the command *halt*, given when the leading squad has advanced company distance in the new direction, it halts and dresses to the right; the other squads successively halt and dress upon arriving in line.

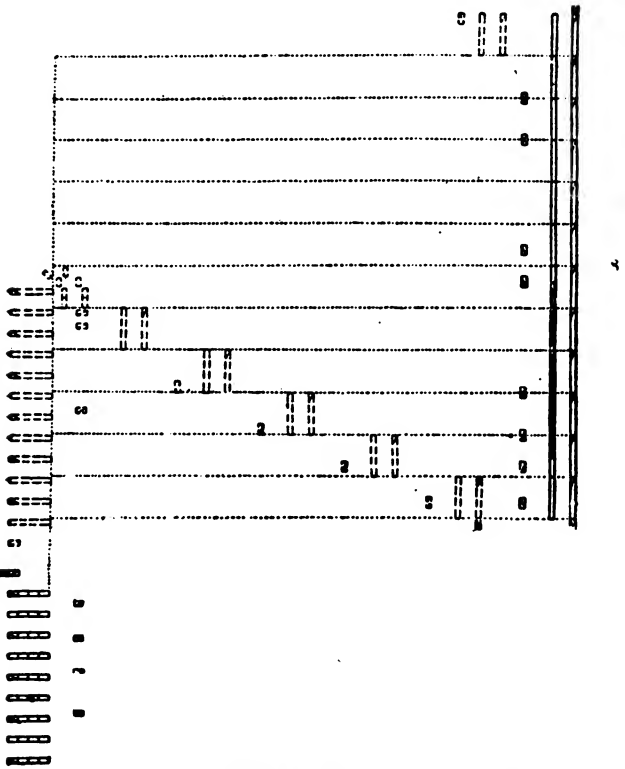
The command *front* is given when all are aligned.

If the movement is executed toward the side opposite the file closers, each follows the squad nearest him, passing in front of the following squad.

189. To the front: 1 *Right (Left) front into line*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Company*, 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.*** (Pl. 48.)

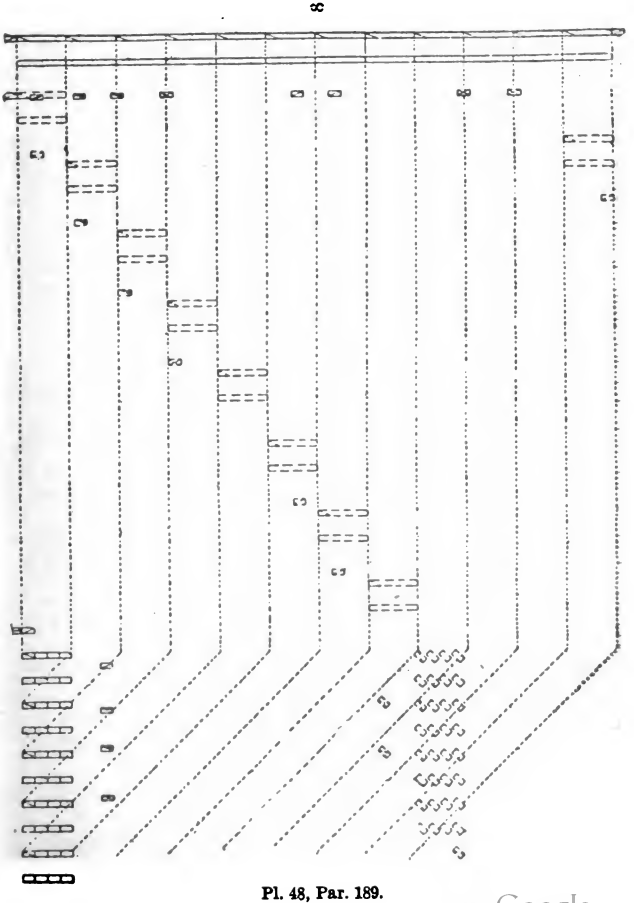
At the command *march*, the leading squad moves to the front, dressing to the left; the guide in front places himself on its left;

the other squads oblique to the right until opposite their places in line, when each marches to the front.



Pl. 47, Par. 188.

At the command *halt* given when the leading squad has advanced company dist[illegible] halts and dresses to the left. The



Pl. 48, Par. 189.

Digitized by Google

other squads halt and dress to the left upon arriving in line; the rear guide takes his place on the right when the rear squad arrives on the line.

The command *front* is given when all are aligned.

If the movement is toward the side of the file closers, they dart through the column as the oblique commences.

If marching in double time, or in quick time and the command be *double time*, or being at a halt and the command be *double time*, the captain commands: *Guide left*, immediately after the command *march:* the leading squad moves to the front in quick time; the other squads move in double time, each taking the quick time and dressing to the left upon arriving in line.

190. In movements where it is prescribed that the leading squad or subdivision moves company distance to the front or flank and halts, it may be halted at a less distance.

This rule is general.

Being in Line, to Face or March to the Rear.

191. 1. *Squads right (left) about*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Company*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

Each squad executes the about; the file closers dart through the nearest intervals.

In facing the line to the rear, as in forming line to the right or left from column of squads, if the squads turn accurately, no dressing is needed.

192. The company at a halt may be moved a few paces to the rear by the commands: 1. *About*, 2. ***FACE,*** 3. *Forward*, 4. *Guide* (*right* or *left*), 5. ***MARCH.***

The guides place themselves in the rear rank, now become the front rank; the file closers, on facing about, maintain their relative positions.

No other movement is executed until the line is faced to the original front.

Being in Column of Squads, to Form Column of Twos.

193. This movement is always executed toward the file closers.

1. *Right* (*Left*) *by twos*, 2. ***MARCH.***

Executed by each squad. The guides take facing distance in front and rear of the column.

Being in Column of Squads, to Form Column of Files.

194. 1. *Right* (*Left*) *by file*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the first comma[illegible] rear ranks close to facing distance, increasing the le[illegible] if in march. At the command

march, all files, except the right one of the leading squad, mark time. The other files of the leading squad when disengaged successively oblique to the right in full step and follow the preceding file at facing distance.

When the left file of the leading squad is about to oblique, the right file of the next squad moves to the front, and so on to the rear of the column, the men keeping closed as nearly as possible to facing distance; the guides take the same distance.

Column of files from column of twos is similarly executed.

195. A column of twos or files changes direction, is halted and put in march by the same commands and means as a column of squads; a column of files changes direction by each man making the change on the same ground as the leading man, all maintaining the full step.

The march in column of twos or files is always in quick time.

196. A column of squads, twos or files, at a halt, may be faced to the rear, or flank, and marched a short distance. No other movement is executed until the column is faced to the original front. The officers and file closers face with the column and maintain their relative positions.

Being in Column of Twos, or Files, to Form Column of Squads.

197. This movement is always executed away from the file closers.

1. *Squads*, 2. *Left (Right) front into line*, 3. ***MARCH***, 4. *Full step*, 5. ***MARCH.***

Executed by each squad.

The guides take distance of forty inches in front and rear of the column.

When in column of files, the leading squad executes the movement as in the School of the Squad; the squads in rear successively form as explained for the leading one, the leading file of each taking the half step at forty inches from the rear rank of the squad next in front; at the fifth command, all resume the full step.

Column of twos is formed from column of files on the same principles, substituting *twos* for *squads* in the commands; the rear rank remains at facing distance.

MOVEMENTS BY PLATOONS.

198. The company having been formed, the right may become the left; the flanks, the center; and the reverse.

Whenever the flanks become the center, the second and third sergeants take the posts in the line of file closers prescribed

Column half right (*left*) is similarly executed; each chief gives the preparatory command: *Right* (*Left*) *half turn.*

To Put the Column of Platoons in March and Change Direction at the Same Time,

204. 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide right* (*left*), 3. *Column right* (*left*); or, 3. *Column half right* (*left*), 4. ***MARCH.***

At the third command, the chief of the leading platoon commands: *Right* (*Right half*) *turn.*

The movement is executed as in the preceding paragraph.

205. In changing direction in column of subdivisions, each chief, on the completion of the movement by his subdivision, announces the guide on the side it was previous to the turn.

This rule is general.

Being in Column of Platoons, to Face or March to the Rear.

206. 1. *Squads right* (*left*) *about*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Company*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

Each squad executes the about. If one platoon be smaller than the other, the guide of the rear platoon regains the trace and distance on the march.

To Form Line from Column of Platoons.

207. To the front:

Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (*Left*) *front into line*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***FRONT.***

At the second command, the chief of the leading platoon commands: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide left;* the chief of the rear platoon commands: *Right oblique.*

The leading platoon advances company distance, when its chief commands: 1. *Platoon*, 2. ***HALT,*** 3. *Left*, 4. ***DRESS,*** and passes around the left flank to his post. The rear platoon obliques to the right, its chief commanding: 1. *Forward*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Guide left*, when the platoon is opposite its place in line; on arriving near the line, the chief halts the platoon, commands: 1. *Left*, 2. ***DRESS,*** and passes around the right flank to his post.

The captain superintends the alignment from the left flank.

If marching in quick time, the chief of the leading platoon commands: *Guide left*, and the movement is completed as just explained.

If marching in quick time and the command be *double time*, the captain commands: *Guide left* (*right*) immediately after the command *march;* the chief of the leading platoon cautions

it to advance in quick time and commands: *Guide left;* the chief of the rear platoon commands: *Double time* and when the platoon is abreast of the leading platoon commands: 1. *Quick time,* 2. ***MARCH,*** the platoons having united, the chiefs pass around the flanks to their posts. If marching in double time, the chief of the leading platoon, at the first command of the captain, commands: *Quick time.*

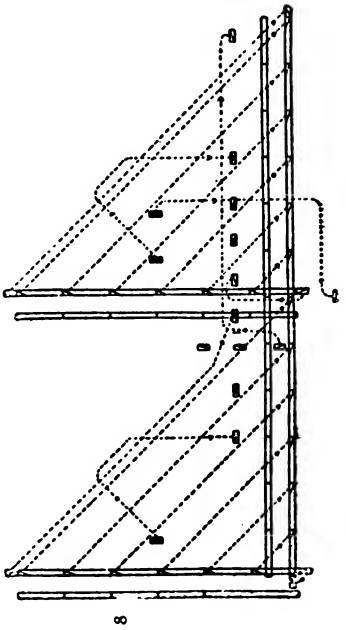
Column of platoons may be formed from column of sections in a similar manner; the word *platoons* precedes the commands of the captain. (Par. 319.)

208. To the right or left: 1. *Platoons right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Company,* 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step,* 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

Each platoon executes right turn on fixed pivot.

At the second command, each chief of platoon takes his post in rear of his platoon, passing around its left flank.

Before forming line to the right or left, the captain requires the guide of the rear platoon on the flank toward which the movement is to be executed to cover; if marching, he announces the guide on that flank, if not already there.



Pl. 50, Par. 208.

209. On right or left: 1. *On right* (*left*) *into line,* 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Company,* 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.***

The chief of the leading platoon commands: *Right turn.* The leading platoon turns to the right on moving pivot.

The command *halt* is given when the leading platoon has advanced company distance in the new direction; its chief commands: *Right dress,* and passes around the right flank to his

The rear platoon marches straight to the front, changes direction by command of its chief when opposite the right of its place in line, and, when the right file has arrived on the line, is halted by its chief, who also commands: *Right dress*, and passes around the left flank to his post.

The captain verifies the alignment and commands: ***FRONT.***

Being in Column of Platoons to March by the Flank.

210. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

Each platoon marches in column of squads to the right; each chief of platoon takes post on the left of his leading guide; the leading guide of the platoon on the designated flank is the guide of the company; the leading guide of the other platoon marches abreast of him and preserves the interval necessary to form front into line.

The post of the captain is three paces in front of the line of leading guides and opposite the center of the interval between the platoons.

To Form or March Again in Column of Platoons.

211. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Company*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

Being in Line of Platoons in Column of Squads, to Form Line to the Front.

212. 1. *Platoons*, 2. *Right* (*Left*) *front into line*, 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. *Company*, 5. ***HALT,*** 6. ***FRONT.***

Each platoon forms right front into line; each chief of platoon takes post in rear of his platoon, passing around its left flank.

The command *halt* is given when the leading squads have advanced company distance.

If the movement is executed in double time, the captain commands: *Guide left* (*right*), after the command *march.*

Being in Line of Platoons in Column of Squads, to Form Column of Squads to the Right or Left.

213. 1. *Platoons*, 2. *Forward, column right* (*left*), 3. ***MARCH.***

The chiefs of platoons take their posts, passing around the heads of their platoons as they are about to unite in column of squads.

If marching, the command *forward* is omitted.

Digitized by Google

Being in Column of Squads, to Form Column of Platoons.

214. 1. *Platoons*, 2. *Right* (*Left*) *front into line*, 3. ***MARCH***, 4. *Company*, 5. ***HALT.***

At the second command, each chief of platoon places himself near the head of his platoon.

At the command *march*, each platoon forms right front into line.

The command *halt* is given when the leading squad has advanced company distance; each chief of platoon verifies the alignment of his platoon, commands: ***FRONT***, and takes his post.

If marching in double time, or in quick time and the command be *double time*, or being at a halt and the command be *double time*, the captain commands: *Guide left* (*right*), after the command *march*.

Being in Column of Squads, to March in Line of Platoons in Column of Squads to the Right or Left.

215. 1. *Platoons*, 2. *Forward*, *column right* (*left*), 3. ***MARCH***, 4. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

Each platoon changes direction to the right; each chief of platoon takes his post by the side of his leading guide.

If marching, the command *forward* is omitted.

ROUTE STEP.

216. The column of squads is the habitual column of route.

Marching in quick time: 1. *Route step*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The officers carry their sabers at will or in the scabbard; the men carry their pieces at will, keeping the muzzles elevated; they are not required to preserve silence nor keep the step. The ranks cover and preserve their distance.

If from a halt: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Route step*, 3. ***MARCH.***

To resume the march at attention: 1. *Company*, 2. ***ATTENTION.***

At the command *attention*, the pieces are brought to the right shoulder and the cadenced step in quick time is resumed.

The company in line or in column of platoons may march in route step.

The company in route step changes direction by the same commands as in the march at attention.

If halted when in route step, the men come to the *rest*.

217. To march at ease: 1. *At ease*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The company marches as in route step, except that silence is preserved.

Digitized by Google

To resume the march at attention: 1. *Company*, 2. ***ATTENTION.*** If halted when at ease, the men remain *at ease.*

A company may march *at ease* from *route step*, and the reverse.

SINGLE RANK.

218. All movements in the School of the Company may be executed in single rank by the same commands and similar means as prescribed for double rank. Single rank is used only when the company is very small and is limited entirely to movements in close order. The company, under all circumstances, is formed in double rank.

Marching in Column of Squads, to take Single Rank Distance.

219. 1. *Single rank distance*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command *march*, the front rank of the leading squad continues the march; the other ranks *mark time* and successively resume the full step when at a distance of ninety-two inches. The guides maintain the distance of forty inches in front and rear of the column.

If the files are not all complete in the squads, the captain, before giving the commands for single rank distance, causes them to be made complete by transferring surplus men to or from the file closers.

Marching in Column of Squads with Single Rank Distance, to Form Column of Squads with Double Rank Distance.

220. The original right squad being in front, the captain commands: 1. *Double rank distance*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH.***

At the second command, the leading guide and rank mark time. The remaining ranks and rear guide close to forty inches and mark time.

At the fourth command, all resume the full step.

If the command *double time* is given all take up the double time except the leading guide and rank, who maintain the full step. Quick time is resumed by each rank when at the distance of forty inches from the preceding rank; the third and fourth commands are omitted.

EXTENDED ORDER.

221. The commands for the extension of the company are, in general, applicable to a platoon or section when detached.

222. The company in battalion is regularly extended in one echelon; the company acting alone, in three.

223. The following rules and exercises, to be applied usually

by the company drilling alone, presume the company to be an integral part of a battalion, thus allowing the company to drill in such formation as will ordinarily fall to its lot in battle.

Posts of Officers and Noncommissioned Officers.

224. In extended order the post of the captain, when at a halt, is in rear of the center of the company and at such distance as best enables him to supervise and control; advancing, his post is six paces in front of the corporal of the center squad. He goes wherever his presence is most necessary, but returns to his regular post as soon as the emergency that calls him away has passed.

The post of a lieutenant, when at a halt, is in rear of the center of his platoon, three paces from the line of sergeants; advancing, it is in front of the center of his platoon on line with the captain. He varies from these positions as emergency requires, returning thereto as soon as the emergency has passed.

To meet the changing conditions of fire action officers vary freely from their prescribed posts in rear of the line at a halt: they may find it advisable to remain on the line at the points where they have halted or to go to and remain with different portions of the line during the halt.

The post of the first sergeant is in the line of sergeants, in rear of the base squad. Should the captain be called from his post in front of the base squad during the advance, the first sergeant takes such post in order that all may be constantly aware of the position of the base squad. On return of the captain the first sergeant drops back to his post in rear of the base squad.

The post of a sergeant is opposite the center of his section; three paces in rear of the rear rank when the squads are assembled, or the line of skirmishers when the squads are deployed. Sergeants not in command of sections are on the same line, in the same relative position as in close order.

The post of the musicians is two paces to the left of the first sergeant at two paces interval unless otherwise directed by the captain.

The post of a corporal when the squads are assembled, is three paces in front of the base file of his squad; when the squads are deployed he takes his place as left skirmisher of his squad. If his squad is detached he follows the principles of the School of the Squad.

If the company in extended order moves by the flank th<

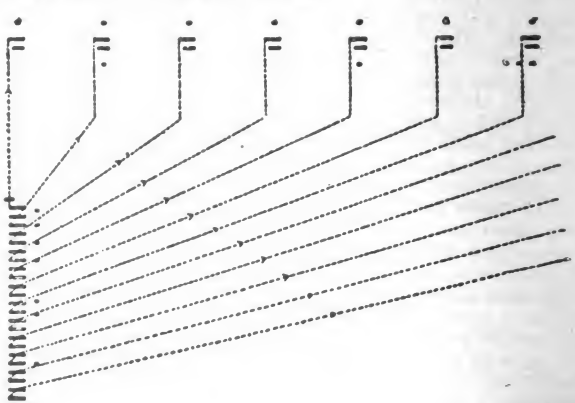
tain and file closers move by the flank and maintain their relative positions as prescribed above.

225. The center squad is the base squad, unless some other is designated.

226. When forming line of squads, excepting on right or left, if marching in double time or in quick time and the command is double time, the base squad moves in quick time; the other squads move in double time and take the quick time upon arriving on the line. The captain gives the necessary commands for the guide.

Being in Column of Squads, to form Line of Squads.

227. To the front: 1. *Line of squads, right (left) front into line,* 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Company,* 4. ***HALT.***



Pl. 51, Par. 227.

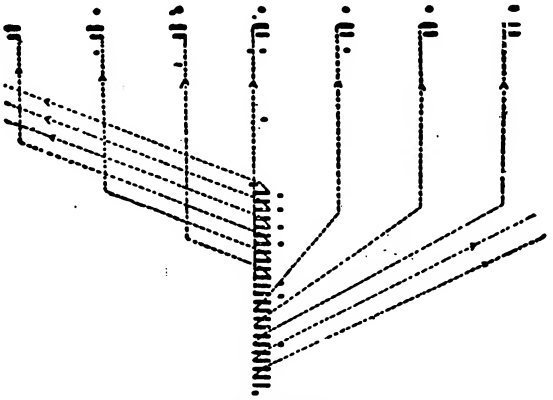
At the first command, the corporal of the leading squad cautions his squad, *forward;* if in march, *continue the march;* the other corporals caution their squads, *right half turn.*

At the second command, the corporals leave their places in ranks to lead their squads; the leading squad is conducted to the front by its corporal; each of the other squads executes a right half turn, and when opposite its place in line, a left half turn and moves forward, taking its interval from the left.

At the fourth command, those squads that have arrived on the line halt. The other squads continue and complete the movement in quick time.

The captain may give an oblique direction to the line by pointing out an objective to the leader of the base squad.

228. The line of squads is formed with the center or other squad remaining on the line of advance by the commands: 1. *Line of squads on (such) squad*, 2. *Rear squads right (left) front into line*, 3. ***MARCH***, 4. *Company*, 5. ***HALT***.



Pl. 52, Par. 228.

The base squad marches to the front in quick time; those in rear of it execute right front into line of squads. The squads in front of the base squad all change direction half left and, in succession from the base squad, each executes a change of direction half right and marches to the front, taking its interval from the squad next on its right and guiding on the base squad.

229. On right or left: 1. *Line of squads, on right (left) line*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Company*, 4. ***HALT***. (Pl. 53.)

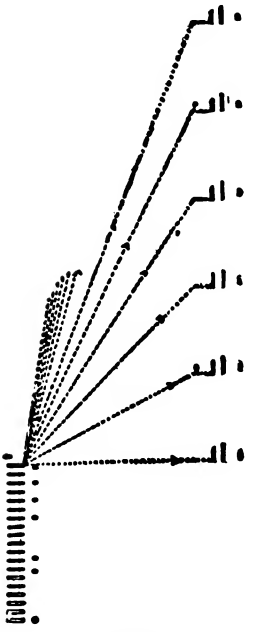
Executed as in close order except that each corporal, as as uncovered, leads his squad to its proper place in line b shortest route.

Digitized by Google

Marching in Line, to Form Line of Squads.

230. 1. *Line of squads on (such) squad*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Company*, 4. ***HALT.***

The base squad moves straight to the front if no other direction is indicated; the squads to the right of the base change direction half right, those to the left change direction half left; when at its interval, each makes a half change of direction and moves to the front.



Pl. 53, Par. 229.

The base squad halts at the fourth command; the others halt on arriving on the line.

If the movement is made from a halt, the base squad stands fast; the others make a full change of direction, march away from the base, incline slightly to the rear, make a second change of direction when at the proper interval, and halt on the line.

To Deploy as Skirmishers.

231. Being in line of squads: 1. *As skirmishers*, 2. ***MARCH.***

Executed by each squad, the corporals taking their places in the line of skirmishers.

These commands may be given at any time after the commencement of the movement to form line of squads; the squads that have their intervals deploy at once, the others as soon as they gain their intervals.

To Deploy as Skirmishers From any Formation.

232. The company in any formation may be deployed as skirmishers facing in any desired direction by the commands: 1. *As skirmishers on (such) squad*, 2. *Forward (By the right and left flanks, To the right, right front, rear, etc.)*, 3. ***MARCH;*** or, 3. *Double time*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide (right, left* or *center).*

The captain points out the desired direction, and alignment if

Digitized by Google

the deployment is to be by the flank, to the corporal of the base squad. The corporal leads his squad in the indicated direction or places it upon the alignment. Each of the other corporals leads his squad by the most convenient route to its normal place in line and causes it to conform to the movements of the base squad. Each squad is deployed as skirmishers as soon as disengaged.

To Increase and Diminish Intervals.

233. Being in line of squads: 1. *On (such) squad, to (so many) paces, extend (close)*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The squads open from or close toward the base squad. If marching, the movement is executed by two partial changes of direction; if at a halt, by two full changes. If at a halt, the base stands fast; if in march, the base continues in quick time or is halted, according as the movement is made in double or quick time.

Being deployed as skirmishers: 1. *On (such) squad, to (so many) paces, extend (close)*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The skirmishers extend from or close toward number two front rank of the base squad.

The Assembly.

234. The captain takes post where his company is to form, and signals or commands: 1. *Assemble*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The skirmishers, squads, or platoons move promptly toward him and re-form the company.

To assemble by platoon: 1. *Assemble by platoon*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the first command, each chief of platoon moves quickly to in front of the squad on which the platoon is to be assembled and repeats the first command.

At the second command, each platoon assembles in the manner prescribed for the company.

To assemble by squad: 1. *Assemble by squad*, 2. ***MARCH.***

Executed by each squad.

To cause one or more squads to take a desired formation, the captain designates the squads and gives the necessary instructions.

The Rally.

235. Rally by company, platoon, or squad is executed in the same manner as explained for the squad.

The captain commands: ***RALLY BY COMPANY (PLATOON, SQUA***

Digitized by Google

Firings.

236. To fire volleys by a subdivision of the company, the captain commands: 1. *Fire by platoon* (*section, squad*), 2. (*So many*) *volleys*, indicates, when desirable, the range and objective, and adds: 3. ***COMMENCE FIRING.***

Each subdivision executes the firing as if alone.

The captain may designate one or more squads to fire or preferably may designate individual sharpshooters and allow them to fire at will.

Normal Attack.

237. The captain designates some well-defined object, as a house, tree, or target, that can be seen and recognized by all. He places the company in line of squads on arriving at the limit of effective artillery fire (on ordinary ground about twenty-five hundred yards) and moves forward in quick time. At twelve hundred yards he deploys the squads as skirmishers. He makes the first halt at one thousand yards and then every fifty yards until arriving at two hundred yards.

After each halt, to take up the advance, the captain moves forward to his position in front of the line and commands *forward;* the lieutenants move forward to their positions in front of the line and repeat the command. The sergeants are particularly charged to see that the skirmishers understand and obey the command.

To halt the line, the captain commands *halt* and the lieutenants repeat the command; the skirmishers halt *on the line of the company officers*, who then take their positions in rear of the line.

The quick time is continued to eight hundred yards, after which the double time is used.

The skirmishers close in on the center as they advance so that at six hundred yards the line consists of about one skirmisher per yard.

The chiefs of platoons designate the squad, or squads, to fire at each halt; the captain designates the platoon when but one platoon is to fire; the chiefs of platoons give the commands for the firing in both cases.

Squads and platoons are so designated as to distribute the expenditure of ammunition as uniformly as possible throughout the company.

At the first four halts one squad in each platoon fires one round; during the next four, two squads in each platoon fire two rounds; during the next four, one platoon fires at will; dur-

ing the next four, the entire company fires at will. At the two hundred yard halt rapid fire is delivered as in School of the Squad.

To charge, the captain signals: ***CEASE FIRING,*** and commands: 1. *To the charge*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The men advance in double time.

Having arrived at about thirty yards from the enemy's position, the captain commands: ***CHARGE.***

The men charge bayonet, quicken the pace, and advance upon the enemy.

To insure cessation of fire, the lieutenants, when necessary, repeat the signal *cease firing*.

238. To advance by alternate platoons from any halt, the captain commands: *First (Second) platoon forward, second (first) platoon commence firing.* The second (first) platoon opens fire; the first (second) platoon moves forward at a run as soon as such fire is opened, halts about twenty-five yards in advance of the second (first) platoon and opens fire; the second (first) platoon then moves forward in a similar manner to about twenty-five yards in advance of the first (second) platoon, halts and opens fire; and so on until the captain directs the platoon in rear to halt on line with the preceding platoon. Each chief of platoon gives the commands for the advance, halt, and fire, of his platoon.

Instruction on Varied Ground

239. The captain designates some objective or details a couple of instructed soldiers to outline the enemy.

He extends, advances, and conducts the attack, on the same general principles as before, but modified by considerations of the ground.

The captain sends out a few instructed men to act as scouts. On reaching a position, about 1,000 yards from the enemy, that allows an effective fire and beyond which the scouts can not advance unaided, they hold such position and await the arrival of the firing line which they join. Should the firing line find it necessary to open fire before reaching the line of scouts the latter shelter themselves by natural features from both fires and await the arrival of the firing line as before.

The halts are made in the same manner as before; the first, on the line of scouts. The captain orders each halt at such place as will allow an effective fire on the objective. The lieutenants move slightly forward or backward so that the

skirmishers, when halting *on the line established by the company officers*, will be in a position that allows an effective fire.

The distance between halts now conforms to the ground.

The number of men firing, and of cartridges fired at the various halts, is fixed by the captain according to the circumstances of the action.

The Company Acting Alone.

240. *The company acting alone* is in three echelons; *firing line*, *support* and *reserve*.

One platoon habitually forms the firing line; one section, the support; one section, the reserve.

This division of the company is varied according to circumstances.

The captain, accompanied by the first sergeant and musicians, takes post at such central point as best enables him to supervise and control the action of the entire company.

The support and reserve follow the firing line at about three hundred and six hundred yards respectively, in the early stages of the attack.

The firing line attacks as described for the company. The reserve is habitually used to deliver a flank attack in conjunction with the direct attack of the firing line. The support follows the firing line at such distance as allows it to protect the flanks of the same and to pursue the enemy when the latter has been thrust out of his position.

If the reserve is not used for a flank attack, the support gradually approaches the firing line and joins the same on one flank at about six hundred yards from the enemy. The reserve, in this case, follows as described above for the support.

The Defense.

241. The principles governing a company acting on the defensive as an integral part of a larger organization, are the same as laid down in the School of the Squad.

The captain causes the company to occupy that portion of the position assigned him and superintends the construction of the necessary artificial cover.

The distances to all prominent objects in front are measured and a record of such measurements is furnished the platoon commanders.

Certain subdivisions may be designated to fire upon the enemy's supports and reserves. Otherwise, all fire is habitually directed upon the nearest enemy presenting a favorable target.

SCHOOL OF THE BATTALION.

CLOSE ORDER.

242. In this school the senior officer present is the instructor; in the text, he is designated as major.

243. Captains repeat such preparatory commands as are to be immediately executed by their companies; as, *forward, squads, right*, etc.; the men execute the commands *march*, and *halt*, if applying to their companies, when given by the major; captains do not repeat the major's commands in executing the manual, nor those commands which are not essential to the execution of a movement by their companies, as, *close in mass*, etc.

Each captain gives his commands so as to insure their execution by his company at the proper time, and in a tone loud enough to be readily heard by the men of his company, but avoids unnecessary loudness.

In changes from line into column of squads and the reverse, and in facing or marching the column of squads to the rear, each captain moves to his proper place at double time, as soon as practicable after the preparatory command indicates to him his new position. In other movements requiring change of position, he moves in the most convenient way as soon as practicable after the command *march* or *dress*.

244. When the formation admits of the simultaneous execution by companies, of movements in the School of the Company, the major may cause such movements to be executed by prefixing, when necessary, *Companies*, to the commands therein prescribed; as, 1. *Companies*, 2. *Right front into line*, 3. ***MARCH;*** 1. *Companies*, 2. *Column right*, 3. ***MARCH;*** etc.

When line, line of columns, or column of subdivisions is formed, the major announces the guide if the march is to be continued.

245. By the designation *line of columns* is meant a line in which each company is in column of squads.

246. The major is responsible for the instruction of his battalion.

When their instruction is not otherwise provided for by

Google

Regulations and General Orders, the officers are assembled by the major for theoretical and practical instruction.

The major requires each captain to drill the battalion.

247. The movements explained herein are on the basis of a battalion of four companies; they may be executed by a battalion consisting of two or more companies, not exceeding six.

Companies may be equalized by transferring men from the larger to the smaller.

The companies are generally arranged from right to left according to the rank of the captains present at the formation.

When a battalion is composed of fractions of several regiments, the companies of each regiment are arranged as already explained; the fractions are then arranged in line from right to left according to the rank of the senior officer present in each, the senior on the right.

The arrangement of companies may be varied by the major or higher commander.

After the battalion is formed no cognizance is taken of the relative order of the companies.

In whatever direction the battalion faces, the companies are designated numerically from right to left in line and from head to rear in column, *first company, second company,* etc.

Changes in the numerical designation of companies, necessitated by a new formation, take place upon the completion of the movement; each captain announces the change to his company as follows: *"A" company, fourth company; "B" company, third company*; etc.

In giving commands or cautions, captains may prefix the proper letter designations of their companies; as, *"A" company,* ***HALT:*** *"B" company, squads right,* etc.

The terms *right* and *left* apply to actual right or left as the line faces; if the about by squads be executed in line formations, the right company becomes the left company, the right center becomes the left center company, and the right wing becomes the left wing.

Those companies to the right of the center in line, are, for reference designated the *right wing;* those to the left, the *left wing;* when the number of companies is odd, the center company is part of the original right wing; when the number of companies is even, the left company of the right wing and the right company of the left wing are designated respectively *right center* and *left center companies.*

The designation *center company,* indicates the right center or

Digitized by Google

the actual center company according as the number of companies is even or odd.

Color Guard.

248. The color guard consists of the two color sergeants who are the color bearers, and two experienced men selected by the colonel. The senior color sergeant carries the National Color; the junior color sergeant carries the Regimental Color. The Regimental Color, when paraded, is always on the left of the National Color, in whatever direction the battalion faces.

The colors are kept at the office or quarters of the colonel, and are escorted thereto and therefrom by the color guard, which is formed and marched in one rank, the color bearers in the center.

249. The color guard, by command of the senior color sergeant, presents arms on receiving and parting with the colors. After parting with the colors, the color guard is brought to order arms by command of the senior member, placed as the right man of the guard.

250. At drills and ceremonies, excepting Escort of the Color, the color, if present, is received by the color company after its formation. The word *color* implies the National Color and includes the Regimental Color when both are present.

The formation of the color company completed, the captain faces to the front; the color guard, conducted by the senior sergeant, approaches from the front and halts at a distance of ten paces from the captain, who then faces about, brings the company to the present, faces to the front, salutes, again faces about and brings the company to the order. The color guard comes to the present and order at the command of the captain, and is then marched by the color sergeant directly to its post on the left of the color company.

251. The color company is the left company of the right wing; the color guard remains with it unless otherwise directed.

In line, the color is between the inner guides of the right and left wings; the other members of the guard are in the line of file closers in rear of the color.

In line of columns, the color guard, in one rank, is midway between the wings and on line with the captains.

In column of companies, platoons, or sections, the color guard, in one rank, is midway between the wings and equidistant from the flanks of the column.

In column of squads, the color is between the wings, abreast of the guide of the color company, in front or in rear of the file

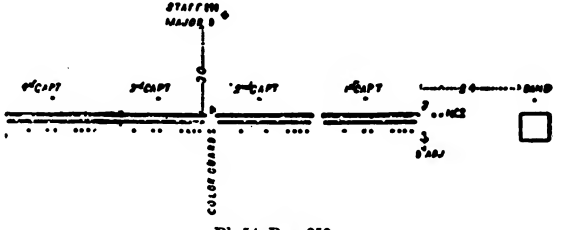
Digitized by Google

or files next the file closers; the other members of the guard retain their places in the line of file closers.

If by movements of the battalion, the color guard finds itself not between the wings, it takes post there as soon as practicable.

Posts of Major and Staff.

252. Except when otherwise specified, the posts of major and staff are as follows:



Pl. 54, Par. 252.

The staff officers, except the adjutant, in order of rank from right to left, take post in all formations three paces in rear of the major; if but one staff officer is present he takes post three paces to the rear and one pace to the right of the major.

In line, the major is posted twenty paces in front of the center of the battalion; the adjutant and sergeant major are opposite the right and left of the battalion, six paces in rear of the file closers; the noncommissioned staff officers except the sergeant major, in the order of rank from right to left take post one pace apart, the junior three paces to the right of and all in line with the front rank of the battalion.

If the line faces to the rear, the noncommissioned staff officers face about individually and move up abreast of the front rank, keeping their relative positions; the adjutant and sergeant major, each in his own wing, move to their relative positions in rear of the line.

In line of columns, the major is twenty paces in front of the center; the adjutant and sergeant major are abreast of the leading guides and six paces outside of the file closers or leading guide, each in his own wing; the other noncommissioned staff officers, in the same relative order as in line, are six paces in rear of the adjut-

Digitized by Google

If the line of columns faces to the rear, the adjutant, sergeant major and other noncommissioned staff officers face about and place themselves in the same relative position as when facing to the former front, the adjutant and sergeant major abreast of the leading guides.

In columns, the major is on the side of the guide, twenty paces from and opposite the center; the adjutant and sergeant major, each in his own wing, are on the side of the guide opposite and six paces from the head or rear of the column. The other noncommissioned staff officers, in order of rank from right to left, take post on a line equal to the front of the column, six paces in front of the captain of the leading company.

When the column faces to the rear the noncommissioned staff officers face about individually and maintain their relative positions.

The major and staff officers are mounted.

In making the about, a mounted officer habitually turns to the left.

Post of the Band and Field Music.

253. The band is posted with the left of its front rank twenty-four paces to the right of the front rank of the battalion.

In column, it marches with its rear rank twenty-four paces in front of the leading company, or its front rank twenty-four paces in rear of the rear company, according to the direction in which the battalion is facing. In the line of columns, the band retains its line position, marching abreast of the leading guides.

The field music, if present with the band, forms in rear of it. When united and the the band is not present, it takes post and moves as prescribed for the band.

To Form the Battalion.

254. The companies having been formed on their parade grounds, *adjutant's call* is sounded, the adjutant proceeds to the point where the base company is to form; the sergeant major reports to him and is posted on the line facing the adjutant at a little more than company distance; the adjutant and sergeant major then draw saber.

If dismounted, the adjutant, accompanied by the sergeant major on his left, marches to the point described and posts the sergeant major.

The center company is conducted by its captain so as to arrive from the rear, parallel to the line; its right and left guides precede it on the line by about twenty paces, taking post facing

Digitized by Google

the left (point of rest) at order arms, so that their elbows are against the breasts of the right and left files of the base company when it is dressed; they are posted under the direction of the adjutant and sergeant major.

The line of guides is prolonged to the right by the right and left guides of companies of the right wing, who precede their companies on the line by about twenty paces, and establish themselves facing toward the point of rest so that each is opposite the proper flank of his company when it is on the line; the left guide places himself about five paces from the right guide of the preceding company. The adjutant aligns the guides, placing himself in rear of the right guides of companies as they successively arrive.

The line of guides is similarly prolonged to the left by the guides of companies of the left wing, the sergeant major aligning them in their positions, placing himself successively in rear of the left guides.

When about one pace from the line, the center company is halted by the captain, who places himself facing to the front, so that when dressing he is on the left of the left file of the company at the post of the left guide in line; he then dresses the company to the left; the breasts of the men opposite the right and left guides rest against their left arms. The other companies of the left wing successively form from left to right so that there is an interval of three paces between guides when they are in line, each company being halted and dressed to the left, as explained for the center company. Similarly, the companies of the left wing successively form from right to left and are dressed to the right.

255. When approaching a line, a company is halted by its captain when it is about one pace in rear of the line of guides.

Guides in front marking the line, in alignments and in successive formations including the formation of the battalion, stand at the order.

When companies are to be aligned, captains place themselves on that flank toward which the dress is to be made as follows:

In line, at the post of the guide and facing to the front.

In column, two paces from the guide, in prolongation of and facing toward the line.

Each captain, after dressing his company, commands: ***FRONT*** and takes post.

These rules are general.

256. At all formations of the battalion except for ceremonies,

Digitized by Google

a noncommissioned officer in command of his company takes the positions prescribed for the captain.

257. Before *adjutant's call* is sounded the band takes a position designated by the adjutant and marches at the same time as the companies to its position in line.

258. The major places himself facing the line, at a distance in front of the center of the battalion about equal to half its front.

259. The adjutant, having assured the positions of the guides of the right company, places himself three paces from its right flank and three paces to the front, facing to the left, and when all the companies are dressed, commands: 1. *Guides*, 2. ***POSTS.***

At the command *posts*, the sergeant major and guides take their posts in line; the noncommissioned staff officers take their posts and draw saber.

The adjutant moves at a trot (if dismounted, in quick time) parallel to and three paces in front of the line of captains to the center, turns to the right, halts midway between the major and the line and faces the latter; he then brings the battalion to the present, turns about, salutes the major, and reports: *Sir, the battalion is formed;* the major returns the salute with the right hand, directs the adjutant: *Take your post, sir;* draws saber, and brings the battalion to the order.

The adjutant turns about and takes his post by the same gait and path as described above, provided the battalion is not placed in march; if placed in march, he moves on the shortest line.

260. The battalion may be formed in line on the right or left company on the same principles, the guides being posted facing the point of rest.

The battalion may also be assembled in column of squads.

In both cases the companies are arranged in the same relative order as when the formation is on the center company. When assembled in column the adjutant reports to the major as soon as the last company has taken its place.

To Open Ranks.

261. Being at a halt: 1. *Open ranks*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. ***FRONT.***

At the first command, the adjutant places himself facing to the left, three paces to the right and three paces to the rear of the front rank.

The lieutenants, right and left guides, and the file closers, of each company, take posts as at the command *open ranks* in the School of the Company.

Digitized by Google

The adjutant aligns the right and left guides, and then places himself facing to the left, in line with the captains, three paces from the right flank.

At the command *march*, the captains carry saber and dress to the right; lieutenants of companies place themselves on the line of captains opposite their posts in line and dress to the right; all officers turn heads and eyes to the front as soon as their alignment is verified; they bring their sabers to the order at the command *front*. The noncommissioned staff, if present, and the front rank dress to the right; the men in the rear rank step back a few inches in rear of the line marked by the guides, halt, and dress on the right guides, who align the men in their respective companies.

The guides who mark the line of the rear rank remain in their positions, after the alignment by the adjutant, until the command *front*.

The color bearers remain in place; the other members of the color guard step back with the file closers.

The sergeant major takes post three paces to the left of and in line with the front rank.

The band takes three paces between ranks, the alignment being verified by the drum major from the right.

The adjutant verifies the alignment of the officers, both ranks and file closers; the last are aligned on the left file closer who posts himself accurately three paces in rear of the line of guides; the adjutant then takes post, facing to the front, three paces to the right of the front rank, in line with the officers.

The command *front* is given by the major when the adjutant takes his post; the guides and drum major then return to their posts in line.

To Close Ranks.

262. 1. *Close ranks*, 2. ***MARCH.***

Each company closes ranks as prescribed in the School of the Company; the two members of the color guard close with the file closers; the band closes ranks.

Manual of Arms, etc.

263. The battalion executes the *halt, rests, steps, manual of arms* with closed or open ranks, *loadings and firings*, resumes *attention, kneels, lies down, rises, stacks* and *takes arms*, as explained in the Schools of the Soldier and Squad, substituting in commands *battalion* for *squad*.

Digitized by Google

264. The color guard executes neither the loadings nor firings; in rendering honors it executes all movements in the manual; on drill, all movements unless specially excused.

In the loadings and firings, the post of the major is twenty paces in the rear of the center of the battalion.

At the first command for loading or firing, the captains take post three paces in rear of the file closers, opposite the centers of their companies. After firing ceases, the major commands: ***POSTS;*** the major and captains return to their posts in line.

These rules are general.

To Fire by Company.

265. The major designates the objective and commands: 1. *Fire by company*, 2. *One* (*two* or *three*) *volley*(*s*), 3. ***COMMENCE FIRING.***

At the third command, the captains of the odd-numbered companies command: 1. "*A*" (*B or such*) *company*, 2. *At* (*so many*) *yards*, 3. *At* (*such object*), 4. ***READY,*** 5. ***AIM,*** 6. *Company*, 7. ***FIRE,*** 8. ***LOAD.***

When the captain of each even-numbered company sees the pieces in the company on his right in the position of load, he gives the same commands. The captains of the odd-numbered companies conform to the same rule with regard to the even-numbered companies on their left.

To Dismiss the Battalion.

266. ***DISMISS YOUR COMPANIES.***

The color guard escorts the color to the office or quarters of the colonel.

Each captain marches his company to its parade ground and dismisses it.

To March in Line.

267. Being at a halt: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide center* (*right* or *left*), 3. ***MARCH.***

The left guide of the center (right guide of right, left guide of left) company is the guide and regulates the step and direction, the other guides maintain the interval of three paces between companies; the captains, in front of the center of their companies, see that the guides preserve a general alignment without abruptly shortening or lengthening the step.

Digitized by Google

268. At the command *guide center* (*right* or *left*) captains caution: *Guide right* or *left*, according to the position of their companies.

This rule is general.

269. To make a slight change of direction while marching, the major commands: *Incline to the right* (*left*), and indicates the new line of direction. The guide gradually advances his left shoulder, giving time for the alignment to conform to his movement.

270. If the battalion loses step, the major commands: ***STEP:*** captains and their companies immediately take the proper step. In line, or in column of squads, if each captain is careful to keep step with the base or leading company and then requires his company to keep in step with him, the battalion will easily retain the step.

271. Marching considerable distances, the line formation that the battalion habitually takes, is the line of columns.

Being in Line, to Face or March to the Rear.

272. 1. *Squads right* (*left*) *about*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide center* (*right* or *left*).

Each squad executes the about; the color turns about and takes position in the front rank; the other members of the color guard and the file closers dart through to their new positions; the adjutant and sergeant major pass around the flanks.

The fourth command is given as the squads unite in line.

In facing the line to the rear, as in forming line to the right or left from column of squads, if the squads turn accurately, no dressing is needed; the major directs a captain to dress his company when necessary.

273. The battalion at a halt may be marched a few paces to the rear by the commands: 1. *About*, 2. ***FACE,*** 3. *Forward*, 4. *Guide center*, 5. ***MARCH.***

The officers, sergeant major and file closers, upon facing about, remain in their positions; the color bearer and guides step into the rear, now become the front rank; no other movement is executed until the battalion is again faced to the original front.

To Oblique in Line.

274. 1. *Right* (*left*) *oblique*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The major see[illegible] the battalion continues parallel to its original line.

Digitized by Google

To resume the direct march: 1. *Forward*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Guide center* (*right* or *left*).

Alignments.

275. Being at a halt, to rectify the alignment: *Captains rectify the alignment.*

The captains in the right wing dress their companies successively to the left, each as soon as the captain next on his left commands *front;* the captains in the left wing dress their companies similarly to the right. The captains of the center companies dress them without waiting for each other, being careful to preserve the interval of three paces.

When both colors are present, the adjutant guides step back to the line of the rear rank; at the command *front*, they resume their positions in the front rank.

276. To give the battalion a general alignment: 1. *Guides center* (*right* or *left*) *company on the line*, 2. *Guides on the line*, 3. *Center* (*right* or *left*), 4. ***DRESS***, 5. *Guides*, 6. ***POSTS***.

At the first command, the designated guides place themselves on the line facing the center (right or left); the major establishes them in the direction he wishes to give the battalion.

At the second command, the guides of the other companies take the same posts as in forming the battalion.

At the command *dress*, each captain dresses his company to the flank toward which the guides face.

At the command *posts*, the guides return to their posts.

If the new direction of the line be such that one or more companies find themselves in advance of it, the major, before establishing the guides, causes such companies to be moved to the rear.

If the new line be oblique to or at a considerable distance from the battalion, the captains conduct their companies so as to arrive parallel to the line, halt, and dress them as explained.

To Pass Obstacles.

277. When marching in line or in column, captains without command of the major, conduct their companies so as to pass obstacles with the greatest facility, and then resume the original formation.

Being in Line, to March in Line of Columns.

278. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Full step, companies column left* (*right*), 4. ***MARCH***, 5. *Guide* (*right, left* or *center*).

279. The line of columns is *put in march, halted, faced* or

marched to the rear and *at the oblique* by the same commands and means as the battalion in line.

Being in Line, to Form or March in Column of Squads to the Right or Left.

280. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2, ***MARCH,*** 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH.***

The adjutant and sergeant major pass around the flanks to their posts in column.

In column of squads, the leading guide of each company, except the first, covers the rear guide of the preceding company at a distance of seventy-four inches.

281. The battalion at a halt may be marched a short distance to the right or left in column of files by the commands: 1. *Right* (*Left*), 2. ***FACE,*** 3. *Forward*, 4. ***MARCH.***

All face and maintain their relative positions.

To halt the battalion and face it to the front: 1. *Battalion*, 2. ***HALT,*** 3. *Left* (*Right*), 4. ***FACE.***

282. Being in column of squads, at the commands: 1. *File closers on left* (*right*) *flank*, 2. ***MARCH;*** the captains, guides, adjutant, sergeant major, color guard and file closers change to the opposite flank.

283. The battalion being in column of *squads*, *halts*, *advances*, *obliques*, *changes direction*, *marches to the rear*, *forms column of twos and files*, and *re-forms column of twos* and *squads*, the same as a company substituting in the commands *battalion* for *company*.

Being in Column of Squads, to Form or March in Line to the Right or Left.

284. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide center* (*right* or *left*).

The fourth command is given as the squads unite in line.

General Rules for Successive Formations.

285. Successive formations include formations, either into line or column, in which the several subdivisions arrive in their places successively.

(*a*) In all successive formations into line, the guides of the company first to arrive are posted on the line, opposite the right and left files of the company and facing toward the point of rest. These guides are posted by either the adjutant or sergeant

major according to which is nearest the head of the column or the point of rest.

(*b*) In formations from a halt, the guides are posted at the preparatory command indicating the direction in which the line is to extend; if marching, they hasten toward their positions at the preparatory command, and are posted at the command *march*.

(*c*) In the formations on right (left) into line from column of companies, the first guide is posted eight paces to the right (left) of the leading company. When executed from column of squads, the guides are posted eight paces from the right (left) flank of the leading company excluding the file closers; the guide at the point of rest being posted opposite the front rank of the rear squad. This distance of eight paces may be increased when desired.

(*d*) In the formations front into line from column of companies, the guides are posted against the leading company. When executed from column of squads, the guide at the point of rest is posted five paces to the front and five paces to the right or left of the front rank of the leading squad of the leading company. This distance of five paces may be increased when desired.

(*e*) In the deployments, the guides are posted against the leading company.

(*f*) The line is prolonged as in forming the battalion; the guides are assured by the adjutant or sergeant major nearest the point of rest, or by both if the formation be central.

(*g*) Companies are halted one pace from the line of guides, and immediately dressed up to them toward the point of rest.

(*h*) When the principles of successive formations are well understood by the guides, they may be required to post themselves.

(*i*) The major commands: 1. *Guides*, 2. ***POSTS***, at the completion of all successive formations into line.

(*k*) In successive formations, should the major desire to commence firing pending the completion of the movement, he instructs the captains as to the kind of fire; the adjutant or sergeant major at the head of the column cautions the guides not to take post marking the line.

(*l*) After a company has moved up to its guides at the command *dress*, the file opposite the guide nearest the point of rest stands fast and the company is not moved to the right or left for the correction of an error in interval unless the major so direct-

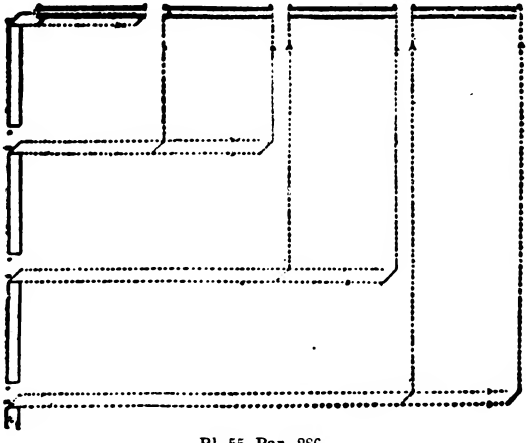
Digitized by Google

(*m*) When a company in line is advancing toward the line of guides, the front rank man on the indicated flank acts as guide and directs his march on the guide of his company posted nearest the point of rest.

Being in Column of Squads, to Form Front into Line.

286. Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (*Left*) *front into line*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the first command, each captain commands *forward column right.*



Pl. 55, Par. 286.

At the command *march*, each company executes *column right.*

Each captain halts when opposite the point where the left of his company will rest on the line. The captain of the first company, when the front rank of the rear squad of his company is abreast of him, forms line to the left. Each of the other captains, when the front rank of the rear squad of his company is abreast of him, marches his company in line to the left and conducts it to the line with guide left.

If in march, the captains omit the command *forward.*

Digitized by Google

Being in Column of Squad to Form on Right or Left into Line.

287. Being at a halt: 1. *On right (left) into line,* 2. ***MARCH.***

At the first command, the captain of the leading company commands: *Squads right;* repeats the command *march,* and marches his company to the line with the *guide right.* Each captain of the following companies commands *forward* at the preparatory command of the major, halts when opposite the point where the right of his company will rest in line; when the front rank of the rear squad is abreast of him, he marches his company in line to the right, and conducts it to the line with the *guide right.*

If in march, the captains of companies in rear of the first omit the command *forward.*

288. When necessary to uncover the head of the following company, file closers close on the rear rank and retake distance after their company has marched a few paces in the new direction.

This rule is general.

Pl. 56, Par. 287.

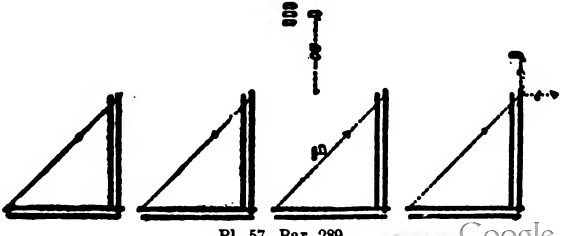
Being in Line, to Form or March in Column of Companies to the Right or Left.

289. 1. *Companies right (left),* 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Battalion,* 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step,* 4. ***MARCH,*** *Guide (right* or *left).*

Each company executes the *turn on fixed pivot.*

The fourth command is given when all the companies have completed the turn.

The command *halt* may be given before the completion of the movement as in the School of the Company.



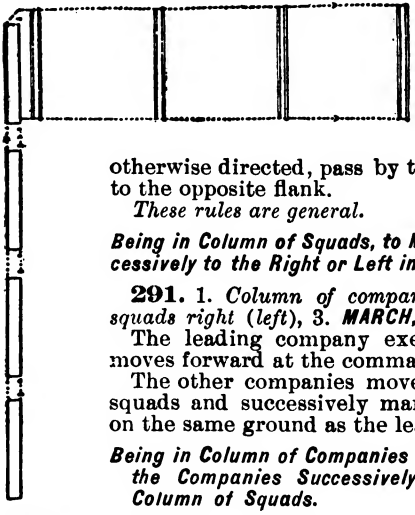
Pl. 57. Par. 289.

Digitized by Google

Full distance in column of subdivisions, is such that in forming line to the right or left the subdivisions will have their proper intervals.

290. In column of subdivisions the guide of the leading subdivision is charged with the step and direction; the guides in rear preserve the trace, step and distance.

Whenever the leading guide is forced out of the direction, he recovers it gradually; the guides in rear conform successively to his movements.



Whenever the guide in column is changed, the adjutant and sergeant major, unless otherwise directed, pass by the most convenient line to the opposite flank.

These rules are general.

Being in Column of Squads, to March the Companies Successively to the Right or Left in Column at Full Distance.

291. 1. *Column of companies*, 2. *First company, squads right* (*left*), 3. ***MARCH***, 4. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

The leading company executes *squads right* and moves forward at the command of its captain.

The other companies move forward in column of squads and successively march in line to the right on the same ground as the leading company.

Being in Column of Companies at Full Distance, to March the Companies Successively to the Right or Left in Column of Squads.

Pl. 58, Par. 291.

292. 1. *Column of Squads*, 2. *First company, squads right* (*left*), 3. ***MARCH.***

The leading company executes *squads right*, and moves forward at the command of its captain.

The other companies move forward in column of companies and successively march in column of squads to the right on the same ground as the leading company.

Being in Column of Companies at a Halt, to Advance.

293. 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide* (*right* or *left*), 3. ***MARCH.***

While marching, to make a slight change of direction the

Digitized by Google

major commands: *Incline to the right* (*left*), and indicates the new line of direction; the leading guide gradually advances the left shoulder, his company conforming to his movements. The rear companies execute the change of direction on the same ground and in the same manner as the leading one.

To Halt the Column.

294. 1. *Battalion*, 2. ***HALT.***

The column halts and the guides stand fast although they may have lost distance and be out of the trace of the guides in front.

To Face or March the Column to the Rear.

295. Executed by the same commands and means as prescribed for the battalion in line, substituting for *Guide center* (*right* or *left*), *Guide* (*right* or *left*); the color guard turns about, the adjutant and sergeant major face about and all maintain their relative positions.

If the companies are unequal in size, each captain assists his guide to gain the trace and distance by obliquing his company, causing it to lengthen or shorten the step when necessary.

Being in Column of Companies at Full Distance, to Change Direction.

296. Being in march; 1. *Column right* (*left*); or, 1. *Column half right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH.***

The captain of the first company commands: *Right turn* (*Right half turn*).

The leading company turns to the right on moving pivot, the captain adding: 1. *Full step*, 2. ***MARCH,*** upon its completion.

The other companies march squarely up to the turning point and each changes direction by the same commands and means as the first.

When the band is at the head of the column, the first company changes direction on the same ground as the band.

To Put the Column of Companies in March, and Change Direction at the Same Time.

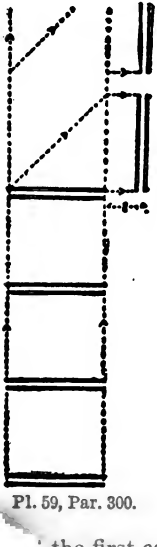
297. 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide right* (*left*), 3. *Column right* (*left*); or, 3. *Column half right* (*left*), 4. ***MARCH.***

Digitized by Google

Being in Column of Full Distance, to Form or March in Line to the Right or Left.

298. The guides on the side toward which the movement is to be made covering: 1 *Companies right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide center* (*right* or *left*).

At the second command, each company turns to the right on a fixed pivot; the color guard, adjutant and sergeant major take their posts in line. The fourth command is given when all the companies have completed the turn.



Pl. 59, Par. 300.

The command *halt* may be given before the completion of the movement as in the School of the Company.

299. Being in column of companies at full distance at a halt, if the guides do not cover or have not their proper distances, to correct them, the major establishes the guide of the leading company and the guide next in rear in the desired direction, and commands: 1. *Right* (*Left*) *guides*, 2. ***COVER.*** The right guides place themselves covering the first two, each at full distance from the guide next in front; the adjutant or sergeant major assures their positions; the major then commands: 1. *Right* (*Left*), 2. ***DRESS.***

Each captain aligns his company on the guide and commands: ***FRONT.***

Should any company be at a considerable distance from its guide, the captain gives the preparatory commands for moving it into place, adding: ***MARCH,*** at the command *dress* from the major.

Being in Column of Companies at Full Distance, to Form on Right or Left into Line.

300. Being in march: 1. *On right* (*left*) *into line*, 2. ***MARCH.***

the first command, the captain of the first company com-
's: *Right turn.*
other companies continue the march, each captain giving
command: 1. *Right turn*, in time to add, 2. ***MARCH,*** when
company arrives opposite the right of its place in line.
Being at a halt, at the first command, captains of companies
rear of the first command: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide right.*

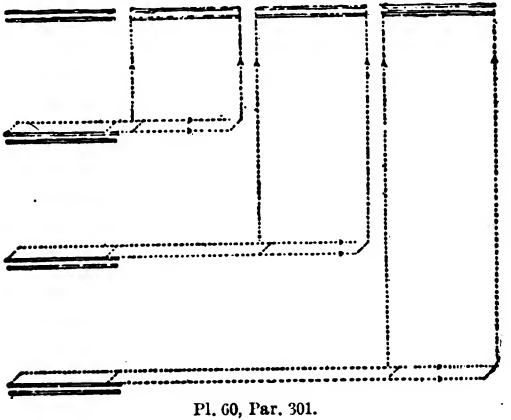
At the captain's command *halt*, those men who have completed the turn halt; the other men complete the turn, halt, and dress.

Being in Column of Companies at Full Distance, to Form Front into Line.

301. Being at a halt: 1. *Right* (*Left*) *front into line*, 2. *MARCH.*

At the first command, the captain of the first company commands *stand fast;* each of the other captains commands *squads right.*

At the command *march*, each company, except the first, marches in column of squads to the right; each captain halts when opposite the point where the left of his company will rest



Pl. 60, Par. 301.

on the line, and when the front rank of the rear squad of his company is abreast of him, marches his company in line to the left and conducts it to the line with guide left.

Being in march, the movement is similarly executed; the captain of the first company commands *company* at the first command, and adds *halt* at the command *march.*

To March in Route Step and at Ease.

302. The battalion marches in route step and at ease as prescribed in the School of the Company. When marching in umn of companies, the guides maintain the trace and dis-

In route marches, the major, adjutant and sergeant major march at the head of the column; the other staff and noncommissioned staff officers, wherever the major directs; the band, in front of the leading company; the captains, at the head or rear of their companies, as directed by the major; when necessary the file closers may be directed to march at the head and rear of their companies.

Being in Column of Companies, to March in Column of Squads to the Front.

303. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Full step, companies column left* (*right*), 4. ***MARCH.***

Being in Column of Companies at Full Distance, to Form or March in Line of Columns to the Right or Left.

304. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH***, 5. *Guide* (*right, left* or *center*).

Marching in Line to Column, to Gain Ground to the Right or Left and Front.

305. 1. *Companies*, 2. *Column half right* (*left*), 3. ***MARCH.***

The companies regulate their movements by those of the company toward which the movement is made, as when obliquing.

To resume the original direction: 1. *Companies*, 2. *Column half left* (*right*), 3. ***MARCH***, 4. *Guide* (*right, left* or *center*).

Being in Line of Column, to Change Direction.

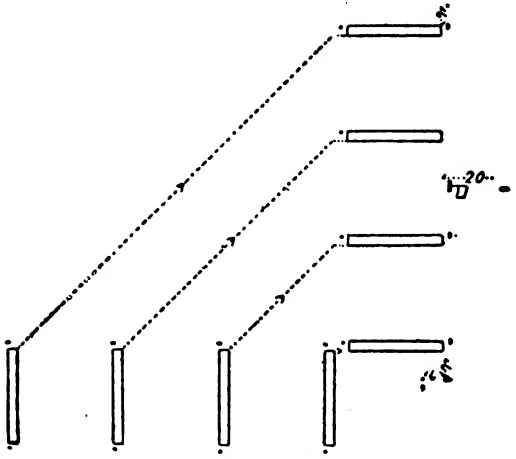
306. 1. *Change direction to the right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT.***

The first company changes direction to the right; the other companies are conducted by the shortest line to their places abreast of the first.

If marching in double time, or in quick time and the command be *double time*, or being at a halt and the command be *double time*, the captain of the first company cautions: *Quick time;* the other companies execute the movement in double time, and on arriving abreast of the first company, their captains command: 1. *Quick time*, 2. ***MARCH***, and announce the guide. If the command *halt* be given during the execution of the movement,

only those companies halt that have arrived in place; the others successively halt upon arriving on the line.

If executed in double time, the major announces the guide immediately after the command *march*.



Pl. 61, Par. 306.

Being in Line of Columns, to Form Line to the Front.

307. 1. *Companies*, 2. *Right* (*Left*) *front into line*, 3. ***MARCH***, 4. *Battalion*, 5. ***HALT.***

Each company executes *right front into line*.

The command *halt* is given when the leading squads have advanced company distance.

If executed in double time, the major announces the guide immediately after the command *march*.

Being in Line of Columns, to Form or March in Column of Companies to the Right or Left.

308. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT***, or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH***, 5. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

Digitized by Google

Being in Column of Squads, to March in Line of Columns to the Right or Left.

309. 1. *Companies*, 2. *Forward, column right* (*left*) 3. ***MARCH,*** 4, *Guide* (*right, left* or *center*).

If marching, the command *forward* is omitted.

To march again in column of squads: 1. *Companies*, 2. *Column right* (*left*), 3. ***MARCH.***

Advancing in Line of Columns, to Close and Extend Intervals.

310. To close intervals: 1. *On first* (or *such*) *company close.* 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Guide right* (*left*, or *center*).

The captain of the designated company cautions: *Continue the march;* the captains to the right command: *Column half left;* those to the left: *Column half right.*

The designated company halts at the fourth command; the other companies incline toward it until they gain the close interval, when by command of their captains they change direction half right or half left, march to the front and halt on arriving abreast of the designated company.

If marching in double time, or in quick time and the command be *double time*, the captain of the designated company cautions: *Quick time;* the other companies move in double time, and when they arrive abreast of the designated company take quick time.

Intervals are extended, gaining ground to the front, on the same principles: 1. *On first* (or *such*) *company extend*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Guide right* (*left* or *center*).

To Close Intervals Without Gaining Ground to the Front.

311. The major forms columns of companies to the right or left; closes it in mass (par. 313) and then forms line of columns.

Intervals may be extended by the same principles. The major forms close column to the right or left, takes full distance (par. 314) and then forms line of columns.

FORMATIONS IN MASS.

312. The adjutant or sergeant major nearest the leading company places himself in front of the guide at the point of rest and assures the positions of the other guides.

The distance between companies in *mass* is eight paces.

The captains are two paces in front of their companies; they resume their posts when full distance is taken.

Whenever a company takes its place in mass, the file clo[illegible]

close to one pace from the rear rank; they fall back to two paces when full distance is taken.

These rules are general.

Being in Column of Companies at Full Distance, to Close in Mass.

313. Being at a halt: 1. *Close in mass*, 2. *Guide right* (*left*), 3. ***MARCH.***

The captain of the first company cautions: *Stand fast;* and dresses his company to the right; the other captains command: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide right.*

The rear companies move forward; each is halted upon closing to eight paces; each captain establishes his guide and dresses his company to the right.

If marching, the major omits the command for the guide, and the captains of the rear companies omit the commands for putting them in march. At the command *march*, the first company is halted.

If marching in quick time and the command be *double time*, the captain of the first company cautions it to advance in quick time; each of the other captains commands: 1. *Quick time*, 2. ***MARCH,*** upon closing to eight paces.

If marching in double time, the movement is executed in the same manner; the captain of the first company commands: *Quick time*, at the first command of the major.

To arrest the march during the execution of the movement: 1. *Battalion*, 2. ***HALT.*** Only those companies halt that have closed to eight paces; the other companies halt successively at the commands of their captains, upon closing to eight paces.

To close in mass on the rear company, the major faces the battalion to the rear by turning about by squads; the column is closed as before; the battalion is then faced about by squads.

Being in Mass, to Take Full Distance.

314. Being at a halt: 1. *Take full distance*, 2. *Guide right* (*left*), 3. ***MARCH.***

The captain of the first company commands: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide right.*

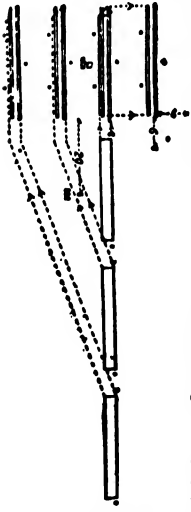
Each of the other captains commands: 1, *Forward*, 2. *Guide right*, 3. ***MARCH,*** when his company is at full distance. The guide is the same as announced by the major. If marching, the major omits the command for the guide.

If marching in quick time, at the command *march*, the

tains of the companies in rear of the first command: 1. *Mark time*, 2. ***MARCH,*** and successively command: 1. *Full step*, 2. ***MARCH,*** when at full distance.

If marching in quick time and the command be *double time*, the captain of the first company commands *double time;* the other captains caution their companies to continue the quick time, and successively command: 1. *Double time*, 2. ***MARCH,*** when at full distance.

If marching in double time, the first company continues in double time; the captains of the other companies command: *Quick time*, at the first command of the major, and successively command: 1. *Double time*, 2. ***MARCH,*** when at full distance.



Pl. 62, Par. 315.

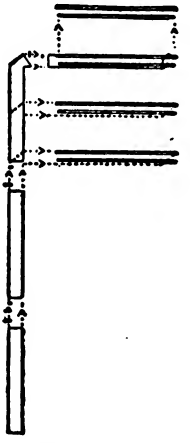
To form line to or on the right or left, the major first causes the column to take full distance.

Being in Column of Squads, to Close in Mass.

315. 1. *Close in mass*, 2. *First company, squads right (left)*, 3. ***MARCH.***

At the command *march*, the first company marches in line to the right with guide right, is halted by its captain after advancing eight paces in the new direction and dressed to the right.

The captain of the second company halts in rear of the right of the first, and when the front rank of his rear squad is opposite the right file of the preceding company, forms line to the right, establishes his right guide eight paces in rear of the right guide of that company and dresses his company to the right. Each of the other companies marches by the shortest line to a point eight paces in rear of the right guide of the preceding company, inclines so as to enter the column and executes what has been prescribed for the second company.



Pl. 63, Par. 315.

Digitized by Google

If at a halt, each captain gives the commands necessary to put his company in march.

The mass may be formed facing the front by first changing direction to the right (left) and then closing in mass to the left (right) as above described. (Pl. 63.)

The mass may be formed in an oblique direction by first changing direction half right (left) and proceeding as above described.

The mass may be formed from line on the right (left) company by first marching in column of squads to the right (left) and then closing in mass to the left (right) as above described.

Being in Mass, to Form Column of Squads.

316. Being at a halt: 1. *Column of squads*, 2. *First (Fourth) company squads right (left)*, 3. ***MARCH.***

The designated company marches in column of squads to the right.

Each of the other companies executes the same movement in time to join in column the one preceding.

Movements in Mass.

317. A column in mass *advances, halts, obliques, marches by the flank* and *resumes the march in column, faces or marches to the rear, changes direction, gains ground to the right or left when marching by the flank, resumes the original direction* and *changes direction when marching by the flank* by the same commands and means as a column at full distance.

To Deploy the Mass.

318. 1. *Right (Left front into line*, 2. ***MARCH.***

Executed as in column of companies at full distance.

MOVEMENTS BY PLATOONS AND SECTIONS.

319. When marching through streets or roads too narrow for company front, columns of platoons or sections may be formed by the commands and means, described in paragraphs 200, 207, 214, and 289, designating *platoons* or *sections* in the commands. In column of platoons or sections, each captain is three paces in front of the chief of his leading subdivision. In column of sections, each chief of section is two paces in front of the center of his section; each chief of platoon is on the side of the guide and midway between the guides of his sections; the right or left file of each section is the guide according as the guide is right left.

Digitized by Google

A column of platoons or sections, when necessary, executes the movements prescribed for a column of companies at full distance, and in a similar manner.

EXTENDED ORDER.

320. The principles of the Schools of the Squad and the Company apply to those units when in battalion.

321. The battalion in regiment may be extended in one echelon, or it may furnish its own support and reserve.

322. The battalion acting alone is extended in three echelons.

323. The color when with a battalion that takes the battle formation, joins the regimental reserve, whose commander either directs the color to join a certain company or detaches a guard to remain with it during the action.

324. Mounted officers dismount when the battalion opens fire; the horses are sent to the rear or placed under cover.

Posts of the Major and Staff.

325. The major followed by his staff and orderlies, when the battalion extends in one echelon, is in rear of the center and at such distance as best permits supervision and control; when the battalion extends in three echelons he is centrally located. If he quits his place he leaves a man to tell where he may be found.

To Extend in One Echelon.

326. Marching in line: 1. *Line of squads on left* (*right*) *squad second* (or *other*) *company*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT.***

The designated company forms line of squads on its left squad and halts. Each of the companies to the right of the base marches in column of squads to the right, each of those to the left of the base marches in column of squads to the left; on gaining their intervals, companies march in line to the left and right respectively and form line of squads on the squad towards and halt on the line of the base company.

If executed in double time the base company forms line of squads in double time, and continues the advance in quick time. Each of the companies to the right of the base marches in column of squads to the right, changes direction half left, then half right, and when at its interval marches in line to the left and extends into line of squ[illegible]n its left squad, each squad resuming quick time as it [illegible]he line of the base company.

Digitized by Google

The companies to the left of the base company extend similarly to the left front.

The movement is executed in a similar manner on any squad of any company.

On arriving on the line each company marches with guide center and keeps on the line of the base company.

327. Being in line at a halt the second company extends by the flank as in the School of the Company. The other companies march in column of squads to the right or left, move from the base company, inclining slightly to the rear, form line to the front when at their interval and extend on the squad nearest the base company.

328. Being in column of squads the battalion executes front into line of squads by the same commands and in a similar manner as a company; each of the companies in rear is conducted in column of squads to near its place and then executes front into line of squads.

To form the line of squads with its center remaining on the line of advance: 1. *Line of squads, third company, right (left) front into line*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT***.

The third and fourth companies execute right front into line of squads. The first and second companies each change direction to the left; the second as soon as its rear has gained fifteen paces in the new direction, forms or marches in line to the right and then forms line of squads on its right squad: the first company executes the same movements and joins on the left of the second company.

Line of squads may be formed in a similar manner on any company other than the first.

329. Being in line of columns: 1. *Line of squads, second* (or *other*) *company, right* (*left*) *front into line*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT***.

The second company executes right front into line of squads. The first company changes direction to the right, gains its interval and executes on left into line of squads. The third and fourth companies change direction to the left; on gaining its interval each forms or marches in line to the right and then forms line of squads on its right squad.

To Extend in Three Echelons.

330. The second and third companies form the firing line; the other two companies form the support and reserve, one company in each. The number of companies in and their assign-

Digitized by Google

ment to the different echelons may be varied at the will of the major.

The battalion being in any formation, the major designates the companies for each echelon, points out the objective, gives the necessary instructions and commands: 1. *Form for attack*, 2. (*Such*) *the base company*, 3. ***MARCH.***

The captain of the base company causes his company to advance in the indicated direction and forms line of squads. The captain of the other company of the firing line causes his company to move forward, conforming to the action of the base company, and forms line of squads.

The company in support gains three hundred yards, the company in reserve, six hundreds yards, from the firing line by remaining at a halt; or, if the firing line is halted, by moving to the rear.

Having gained their distances these companies conform to the movements of the firing line, usually forming line of squads and deploying as skirmishers on the same ground as the firing line.

Normal Attack.

331. The normal attack by the battalion in single echelon conforms to that of the company as regards places of extension, distances between halts, gaits and firings.

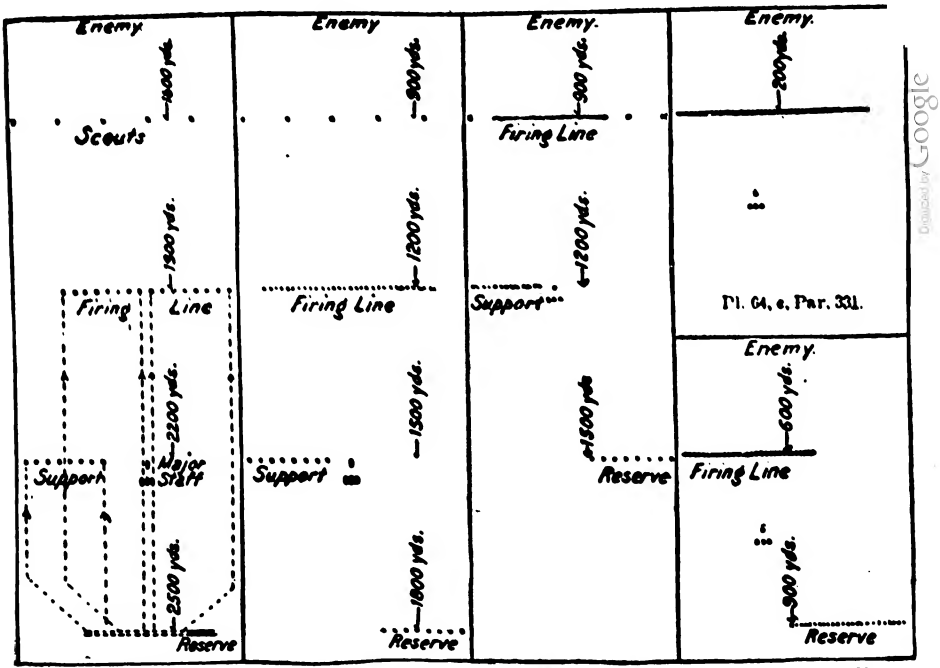
Each company closes on its center so as to have about one skirmisher per yard of front when arriving at six hundred yards.

The captain of the base company continues in the original direction. The captains of other companies incline so as to close their companies toward the base company.

If the battalion is, or is assumed to be, in regiment and in three echelons the firing line advances as above, companies closing on their centers. The company in support is placed on the flank or in an interval of the firing line when the latter arrives at six hundred yards from the objective. The reserve then follows as a support and is placed in the line by squads between six hundred and two hundred yards, or reinforces as a unit at about two hundred yards, taking part in the rapid fire.

To advance by alternate portions of the line, the major designates the companies to move forward and those to open fire. Each captain gives the commands necessary for his own company to advance, halt and open fire, independently of the other companies. The advance by alternate portions of the line, once taken up, is continued until the major directs the companies in rear to halt on line w[illegible] leading company.

Digitized by Google



Pl. 64, a, Par. 331. Pl. 64, b, Par. 331. Pl. 64, c, Par. 331. Pl. 64, d, Par. 331.

Pl. 64, e, Par. 331.

Digitized by Google

Instruction on Varied Ground.

332. The instruction on varied ground when the battalion is in one echelon and when in three echelons if in, or assumed to be in, regiment, follows the principles of the normal attack with the one exception of making the halts with a view to effective fire and the necessary attendant change in the distances between halts. The major sends forward the necessary scouts.

The battalion acting alone follows the principles of the company acting alone. If the reserve company is detached the major remains with the other two echelons.

To Assemble and Rally.

333. When no longer compelled to remain in extended order the major assembles the battalion. Each company is assembled by its captain and the battalion assembled as directed by the major.

The major may order one or more or even all the companies in the firing line to rally. The support and reserve aid in repelling the attack which caused the rally.

The Defense.

334. The major assigns to each company its position and gives instructions as to the amount and kind of artificial cover and obstacles to be constructed.

The captains arrange for this construction and cause measurements and record of ranges to be made as prescribed in the School of the Company.

REMARKS ON TROOPS IN BATTLE

335. Regimental and larger organizations move by battalions. All commanders are guided in battle by the same general principles.

The Attack.

336. Purely frontal attacks and too great dispersion of the command are to be avoided. If necessary to adopt a frontal attack it is made in conjunction with a flank attack whenever possible. This flank attack is arranged for by overlapping the enemy's flank and wheeling in by the overlapping portions of the command; or by making a turning movement with a portion of the command. The turning movement completed, the conduct of the force so emplo- -llows the rules for the frontal attack.

Digitized by Google

Development of Enemy's Position.

337. Contact with the enemy is obtained by the cavalry screen. The preliminary development of the enemy's position is made by the advance guard; the general development by the line of scouts.

When the preliminary development reveals the presence of detached advanced posts, and the advance guard is not strong enough to carry them, they are attacked by special bodies of troops before the dispositions for the general attack are made.

Troops engaging in these preliminary attacks, if much disorganized thereby, are placed in the third line in the formation for the general attack.

Dispositions for Attack.

338. Troops are habitually formed in three lines. The strength and composition of each line varies with circumstances; organizations being so placed as to reduce to a minimum the disorganization and mingling of the different units.

The formations of the different lines are so made as to:

1. Enable the troops to subject the enemy to the most effective fire action possible.
2. Present the least favorable target to the enemy.
3. Admit of celerity of movement.
4. Deliver a heavy shock at the end of the fire action.

Functions of the Different Lines.

339. The line of scouts is sent out from the troops of the first line, covers its front and flanks at about three hundred yards so as to prevent closed bodies being subjected to a fire at short range, drives in the enemy's scouts, gathers information regarding the ground and sends or signals such information back to the first line. The movements of the line of scouts are regulated by the officers accompanying it, one officer for the scouts from each battalion.

The first line makes the attack and conducts the fire action. It is protected against flank attacks by its own supports in the extreme and long range zones, by its reserve in the mid range, and by the second line after the reserves are absorbed.

In some cases the first line makes the charge without waiting for the second line; this when the commander of the first line is convinced that the enemy is wavering and that such charge will be successful.

The second line (about six hundred yards in rear of the

Digitized by Google

serves on extension), supports the first line as above, gradually closing up as the first line halts for fire action, and joins the first line in the charge, the arrival of the second being in general the signal for the rapid fire to cease and the charge to be delivered.

The third line (about one thousand yards in rear of the second on extension), unless a special body of troops is used for the purpose, follows the action, and is frequently conducted to extend beyond and overlap the enemy's flank so as to attack the same while the frontal attack is in progress.

If not used in such flanking movement the third line follows the second at such distance as to allow: protection of the flanks of the preceding lines; pursuit of the enemy after he has been thrust out of his position; occupation of such position while the preceding lines are being re-formed; protection of their retreat if defeated.

Gaits.

340. The gaits laid down in the normal attack and instruction on varied ground are, of necessity, frequently departed from. The constant endeavor is to cross exposed ground as quickly as possible, provided this does not exhaust the soldier and thus disqualify him for accurate firing and the final charge.

It is also the endeavor to close on the enemy as soon as possible in order to prevent a shifting of his forces to meet the flank attack; to arrive sufficiently close to neutralize the enemy's accurate knowledge of ranges, which is of more importance at extreme and long than at mid and short ranges; and to decrease the chance of lack of ammunition at the decisive stage through having delayed in the earlier stages.

It is important that troops not engaged in firing be sheltered from the fire of the enemy. In the attack such shelter is obtained from natural features. The proper use of an increased gait frequently increases the length of time such shelter can be used and decreases the time of exposure to fire; this applies particularly to troops in the second and third lines.

Ammunition Supply.

341. When it is apparent that troops are going into battle the number of cartridges carried by each man is increased to at least one hundred and fifty rounds, if possible, by distribution from the battalion ammunition wagons. The empty wagons are immediately replaced by loaded wagons from the ammunition columns.

The ammunition of the [illegible]ine is replenished during lulls

Digitized by Google

in the fight, when access to the line is made possible by natural features, and at night.

Exhaustion of ammunition is delayed by limiting the number of squads in company, and of companies in battalion, which fire in the preliminary stages of the battle; by strict enforcement of the rules of fire discipline, by deliberation in determining ranges and giving commands for firing at the various halts.

Troops occupying a defensive position are, in advance of the battle, provided with sufficient ammunition to avoid any necessity of replenishing the same by day.

Relieving the Firing Line.

342. In the exceptional cases in which the firing line must be relieved, the commander of the same is notified and in turn causes such notification to be transmitted to all his subordinates.

The relieving line completes its deployment in rear of and moves up into or through the firing line, which is then marched to the rear and assembled on favorable ground.

If the line is moving to the rear the relieving line deploys and halts in favorable position; the firing line passes through the relieving line and is assembled as before.

Action Against Cavalry.

343. The advance or attack of infantry should not be checked by the appearance of cavalry. The latter should be kept at a distance by the fire of subdivisions designated for this purpose.

If attacked in front the charge should be received without change of formation. If attacked in flank the designated subdivisions change front to face the attack.

If in battle formation, and cavalry attack as foragers or in mass, it is better to receive the attack in place than to rally. Only such dispositions are made as will quickly develop the greatest intensity of fire. If attacked in front the firing line opens fire; the supports, and if necessary the reserves, are placed in rear of the flanks to guard the latter and fire upon the cavalry endeavoring to envelope them. If attacked in flank the supports and reserves face so as to form in echelon ready to protect the threatened flanks by their fire.

If attacked by echelon, fire is not directed upon a fraction already repulsed, but upon the one following it.

In a personal encounter the foot soldier should endeavor gain the left flank of the mounted man.

Digitized by Google

Action Against Artillery.

344. If the artillery of the enemy is in his firing line, especially selected sharpshooters should be detailed to work their way to the front as far as practicable and fire upon the cannoneers. When not practicable to push these sharpshooters to the front, subdivisions, posted on high ground, should fire over the heads of the firing line upon the cannoneers.

If the artillery of the enemy occupies a detached advanced position, the attack should be directed against one or both flanks, its infantry support being held in position by a frontal attack. The skirmishers should be widely extended and all closed bodies of troops kept under cover.

Fire against artillery in motion is directed against the horses.

The Defense.

345. Troops on the defensive, like those in attack, are formed in three lines.

If the defensive is taken on contact with the enemy, the formation follows very closely the rules laid down for the attack. The first line is placed in position to meet the fire action of the attack, on ground most favorable for the development of fire action and least favorable for the advance of the enemy. The military crest of a uniform slope is chosen when practicable.

The second line is placed in rear, usually at less distance than in the attack, covered by the reverse slope when practicable. It is used to reinforce portions of the first line that are being subjected to the heaviest attack; to make short counter attacks against local flanks of the enemy when, by turning in on an advanced position of the defense, such flanks are exposed; to guard the flanks of the first line; and to reinforce the first line in time to meet the charge.

The third line is held in rear, under such cover as is available, usually at less distance than in the attack. It is used to protect the flanks of the lines in front, to meet a flank attack by the enemy, to make flank attacks on the same, and to cover the retreat of the troops in front if they are driven back.

The distances at which the second and third lines are held depends so largely upon using natural cover that they can not be definitely fixed.

When the defense occupies a selected position to await the val and attack of the enemy it strengthens such positions reparing cover and ways of communication, clearing away ob-

structions to free fire, and preparing obstacles to impede the enemy's advance and hold him under fire at short range.

Aided in this way the first line can be more widely extended than in the attack. The second line can be of less strength, thus allowing more men to be placed in the first line. These added men in the first line may be used to extend the front still further, or, when the ground permits, they may be placed in intrenchments near the foot of the slope crowned by the main intrenchments.

The position selected should as far as possible, fulfill the following conditions:

1. It should have a good field of fire to the front and flanks.
2. It should not be commanded by higher ground within effective range that could be occupied by the enemy.
3. Its flanks should rest upon defensible objects.
4. It should have good lateral communications to allow reinforcing the different portions of the first line
5. It should cover the line of retreat.

The character and extent of fortification depend upon the time available and the character of the ground. Strong points affording unusually good fields of fire to their fronts and flanks are strongly fortified, with field works if time permits, and connected with shelter trenches.

All defenses, shelter trenches in particular, are concealed by the use of sod, grass or other material that will cause them to blend with the surrounding ground.

The conditions in the defense are more favorable for control of fire than in the attack. The men are in position and not fatigued by marching, the ranges are more accurately known, and the supply of ammunition is more plentiful.

These conditions render the use of volleys practicable during at least the preliminary stages of the battle. The volleys should be executed by as large a front an can be controlled by a single voice whenever the target justifies such expenditure of ammunition. They are directed against closed bodies whenever practicable. When the first line is in two intrenchments, one above the other, the fire of the upper intrenchment can be so directed on the supports and reserves while the fire from the lower intrenchment is directed against the firing line.

Night Operations.

346. To be successful, a night attack must be a surprise and must proceed with promptness and vigor.

It is essential to operate over ground known in advance.

equally important that the leaders of the different units be instructed as to the parts they are to take, the field assigned them, the rallying points, and the line of retreat.

On the offensive, the troops in compact formation approach under cover of darkness, and without firing, as near as possible to the enemy's position; they then assault resolutely, not replying to fire, and come as quickly as possible to the encounter, hand to hand.

When night operations are used in preparation for a determined general attack the movements should be so timed that the attack can be made at dawn.

On the defensive, when a night attack is expected, the position is further reinforced by troops and strengthened by obstacles; the positions occupied by the different units are carefully pointed out.

After the opening of the action all movements which tend to produce confusion are avoided.

The fire is directed particularly upon the approaches to the position.

Withdrawal from Action.

347. The withdrawal of defeated troops, whether consisting of assailants driven back, or defenders thrust out of position, should, whenever possible, be delayed until night. When this is impossible the withdrawal should be covered by fire, from alternate portions of the line, if not too badly demoralized; or, from the reserve, which takes position and opens fire on the enemy as soon as the retreating remnants are far enough to the rear to permit such fire.

Digitized by Google

EVOLUTIONS OF THE REGIMENT.

CLOSE ORDER.

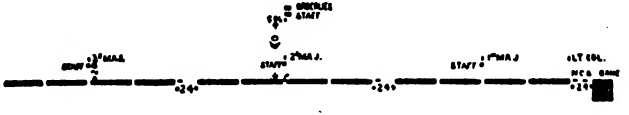
348. The regiment consists of three battalions, but the rules prescribed are applicable to a less or greater number.

The colonel is the instructor.

349. The designation *line of columns* applies to a line of companies each in column of squads, and to a line of battalions each in columns of squads or companies. The designation *line of masses* applies to a line of battalions, each in mass.

Posts of Field Officers, Regimental Staff, Noncommissioned Staff, and Band.

350. In line, and in line of columns, the colonel is posted sixty paces in front of the line, opposite its center; in line of masses, this distance is reduced to thirty paces; in column and in route marches, he is twenty-four paces in front of the band.



Pl. 65, Par. 350.

In line, in line of columns, and in line of masses, the lieutenant colonel is posted on line with the majors, opposite the right of the first battalion; in column, he is on the side of the guide, abreast of and twenty paces from the head; during field movements and on the march he is not restricted to any particular post; he acts as an assistant to the colonel, as the latter may direct.

In line of masses, the post of a major is twelve paces in front of his leading company.

The staff is six paces in rear of the colonel; the adjutant on the right, the others in order of rank from right to left; if but one staff officer is present he takes post six paces to the rear, and one pace to the right of the colonel.

Mounted trumpeters and orderlies are three paces in rear of the staff.

Digitized by Google

In line, in line of columns, and in line of masses, the band is posted with the left of its front rank twenty-four paces to the right of the first battalion. In the evolutions, it takes, as far as practicable, the positions prescribed in the School of the Battalion, unless excused, or a position is assigned to it by the colonel.

In all line formations the noncommissioned staff officers, the sergeant major on the right, form at one pace apart, on the right of the noncommissioned staff of the first battalion; in column, the interval is such that the front of the combined noncommissioned staffs is equal to the front of the column.

General Rules.

351. The colonel gives his commands orally or by trumpet; or communicates them to the majors by staff officers or orderlies.

Each major gives the appropriate commands and causes his battallion to execute the necessary movements. The men wait for the major's commands before executing any movement.

Before directing any movement requiring the designation of a base battalion, the colonel announces orally, or signals by trumpet: *Guide* (*right*, *left* or *center*), *which indicate respectively* the right, left, or center battalion as the base.

The base battalion, if in line or in line of columns, moves with guide *center;* if an interior one and in column of companies, it moves with guide either *right* or *left* as announced by the major. The other battalions move with guide toward and regulate on the base battalion.

Each major ordinarily moves his battalion to its new position, in column of squads.

Each major, when necessary, adds the command *Guides posts* when the guides of the next following battalion are on the line; in case of the base battalion, if an interior one, when the guides of the adjacent battalion last to arrive have been posted.

Excepting in ceremonies, each battalion, by command of its major, stands *at ease* while awaiting the completion of the general movement by other battalions. The battalions are brought to *attention* by the colonel before executing another movement.

When the formation admits of the simultaneous execution of movements by battalions or companies, the colonel may execute the movements prescribed in the School of the Battalion by prefixing *Battalions* or *Companies* to the commands.

The colonel may cause a battalion to execute a separate movement.

Digitized by Google

Formation of the Regiment.

352. The regiment is formed by battalions, in line, or in line of masses, at the discretion of the colonel.

It may also be formed in more than one line, in either of the above formations, the lines not necessarily in the same formation. It may also be formed in column or in line of columns.

The battalions are posted from right to left according to the rank of battalion commanders present, the senior on the right. A battalion whose major is in command of the regiment retains its place. Except for ceremonies, the battalions may be posted at the discretion of the colonel.

In line and in line of masses, the interval between battalions is twenty-four paces

In whatever direction the regiment faces, the battalions are designated from the right when in line or echelon, from the head when in column, *first battalion*, *second battalion*, and so on. If in two lines, the battalions in the first line are designated from the right, *first* and *second;* in the second line, *third*, and so on.

In forming the line the adjutant indicates to the adjutant of the base battalion the point of rest and the direction of the line, then takes post facing the line, about thirty paces in front of the center.

In forming in two or more lines, the other battalions are posted as directed by the colonel, the adjutant, if necessary, indicating to the adjutants their points of rest and direction.

The lieutenant colonel and noncommissioned staff take post as the last battalion is formed. The formation completed, the adjutant brings the regiment to attention if not already there, by the commands: 1. *Battalions*, 2. ***ATTENTION***, and then commands: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS***, each major brings his battalion to attention and present arms; the adjutant salutes the colonel and reports: *Sir, the regiment is formed;* the colonel returns the salute with the right hand, directs the adjutant: *Take your post, sir;* draws saber and brings the regiment to the order. The adjutant takes post, passing by the colonel's right.

To Open and Close Ranks.

353. Being in line at a halt: 1. *Open ranks*, 2. ***MARCH.***
Each major causes his battalion to open ranks.
To close ranks: 1. *Close ranks*, 2. ***MARCH.***
Each major causes his battalion to close ranks.

Digitized by Google

Firings.

354. The firings are conducted by the majors under the direction of the colonel. The colonel, lieutenant colonel and staff pass to the rear of the line. The signal *cease firing* is used to stop the firing. If desired to discontinue the firing in but one battalion, orders to that effect are sent to its major.

Rests.

355. Executed as in the School of the Soldier.

To resume attention: 1. *Battalions*, 2. ***ATTENTION.***

To Dismiss the Regiment.

356. Being in any formation: *Dismiss your battalions.*

Each major marches his battalion to its parade ground, and dismisses it.

To Advance.

357. Being in line, to advance a short distance, the colonel designates the base battalion and commands: 1. *Forward*, 2. ***MARCH.***

358. Being in line, to advance in line of companies in column of squads, the colonel designates the base battalion and commands: 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Full step, companies column left* (*right*), 4. ***MARCH.***

The guides preserve the intervals necessary to form front into line with twenty-four paces between battalions. At close intervals, the interval between battalions is company front.

To re-form the line the colonel commands: 1. *Companies right* (*left*) *front into line*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***HALT.***

Being in Line, to Face or March to the Rear.

359. 1. *To the rear*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Guide* (*right, left*, or *center*). Each major faces or marches his battalion to the rear, squads turning to the right about.

Being in any Formation, to Halt the Regiment.

360. The colonel commands: ***HALT.*** Each major commands: 1. *Battalion*, 2. ***HALT.***

Alignments.

361. Being in line at a halt, to give a general alignment, the colonel selects a base company, causes the guides thereof to be established on the desired line and commands: *Align your battalions.*

The major of the base battalion posts the guides of his remain-

Digitized by Google

ing companies and aligns his battalion. Each major of the remaining battalions posts the guides of the company nearest the base as soon as their position can be determined, and aligns his battalion.

If a battalion be at a considerable distance from or in front of the position it is to occupy, its major moves it to its proper position for dressing.

Being in Line, to Form or March in Column of Squads to the Right or Left.

362. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH.***

Being in Column of Squads, to Form or March in Line to the Right or Left.

363. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***HALT;*** or 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide* (*right, left*, or *center*).

Being in Line, to Form or March in Column of Companies to the Right or Left.

364. 1. *Companies right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

Being in Column of Companies, to Form or March in Line to the Right or Left.

365. 1. *Companies right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. *Guide* (*right, left*, or *center*).

366. The column of companies or squads *advances, obliques, changes direction*, marches in *route step* or *at ease*, and resumes *attention* in the same manner as a battalion.

Being in Column of Squads or Companies, to Face or March to the Rear.

367. 1. *To the rear*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH,*** announcing the guide if in column of companies.

Each major faces or marches his battalion to the rear, the squads turning to the right about.

Successive Formations.

368. The adjutant or sergeant major of each battalion precedes it on the line to indicate the point of rest.

The guides of the leading company of the base battalion are first established.

The guides of the leading companies of the rear battalions are

Digitized by Google

established facing the point of rest of the general line, the nearest guide being twenty-four paces from the flank of the battalion next preceding it.

The distance, when forming two lines or column of battalions, is the front of the battalion in line and twenty-four paces. This may be increased or diminished, the colonel sending orders specifying the distance to the commanders of the rear battalions, or sending a staff officer to indicate the points of rest.

Being in Column of Squads or Companies, to Form on Right or Left into Line.

369. 1. *On right (left) into line*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The leading battalion executes *on right into line;* the other battalions, at the commands of their majors, successively execute the same movement when their leading companies have passed beyond the left flank of the preceding battalion, the majors giving their commands so that their battalions have their proper intervals in line.

Being in Column of Squads or Companies to Form Front into Line.

370. 1. *Right (Left) front into line*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The first battalion executes *right front into line.*

Each of the other majors so marches his battalion in column of squads that, when the head arrives opposite its point of rest, it will be at least twice company distance in rear of the line, then changes direction half left, and on arriving at five paces from the line executes *right front into line.*

To Form Column of Battalions.

371. Being in column of squads: 1. *Column of Battalions*, 2. *First battalion squads right (left)*, 3. ***MARCH.***

The first battalion forms line to the right; the others incline to the left; each enters the column parallel to and at the prescribed distance from the one preceding and forms line as prescribed for the first.

Being in line, column of squads is first formed to the right or left, and the column formed as above.

Being in Column of Battalions, to Form Front into Line.

372. 1. *Right (Left) front into line*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The first battalion stands fast; the second is marched in column of squads and forms line on the right of the first, and the third on the right of the second.

Digitized by Google

COLUMN OF MASSES.

373. In column of masses the distance of each battalion from the one preceding it is equal to the front of its first company.

In forming column of masses the rear battalions are dressed to the same flank as the leading battalion.

Being in Column of Companies at Full Distance, to Form Column of Masses.

374. 1. *Column of Masses*, 2. ***MARCH.*** The guide is announced if necessary.

The first battalion closes in mass; each of the rear battalions closes in mass when at company distance from the one preceding.

Being in Column of Masses at a Halt, to Take Full Distance.

375. 1. *Take full distance, guide* (*right* or *left*), 2. ***MARCH.***

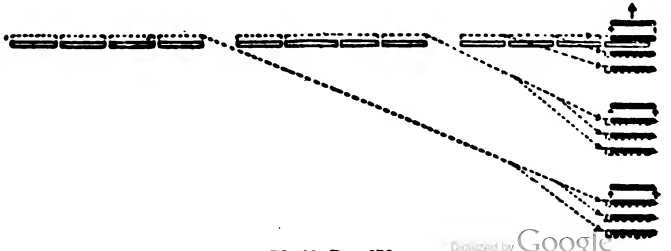
The first battalion takes full distance; each of the rear battalions takes full distance when its leading company has company distance and twenty-four paces.

Being in Column of Squads or Line, to Form Column of Masses.

376. Being in column of squads: 1. *Column of masses to the right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH.***

The major of the leading battalion ploys it in mass to the right (Pl. 62); the major of each of the other battalions marches it so as to enter the column company distance and eight paces in rear of the preceding battalion, and then ploys it in mass.

From line, the column of masses is formed facing to the front

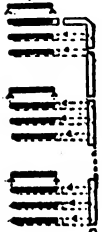


Pl. 66, Par. 376.

Digitized by Google

on the right company of the right battalion (left company of the left battalion) by first forming in column of squads to the right (left) and proceeding as above. (Pl. 66.)

To form the column of masses facing to the front or other direction, the colonel marches the column or squads so that the leading company of the leading battalion is eight paces from the position he desires it to occupy after the column of masses is formed, and proceeds as above. (Pl. 67.)



Being in column of squads, column of masses is formed on the rearmost company by first turning about by squads and then executing the movement as explained.

377. The column of masses *advances*, *halts*, *obliques*, *marches by the flank*, *resumes the march in column*, *faces* or *marches to the rear*, and *changes direction* by the same means as when at full distance.

TO DEPLOY THE COLUMN OF MASSES.

Being in Column of Masses, to Form Line to the Front.

378. 1. *Right* (*Left*) *front into line*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The first battalion forms right front into line; the second forms on the right of the first; the third, on the right of the second; the second and third battalions may march in mass (Pl. 68), or in column of squads, the fourth companies leading, to their new positions. (Pl. 69.)

379. To form line on the rear of the column, the colonel first faces the column to the rear, and then executes the movement as explained.

Being in Column of Masses, to Deploy in Three Lines.

380. 1. *Battalions*, *right* (*left*) *front into line*, 2. ***MARCH.***

Each battalion forms *right front into line.*

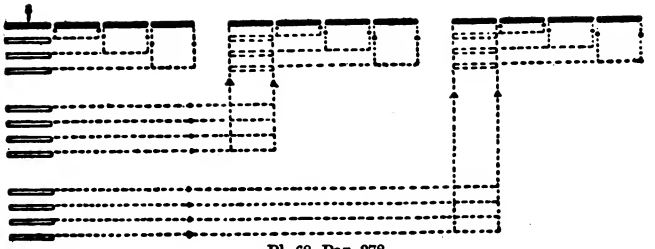
Being in Column of Masses, to March to the Right or Left in Line of Battalions in Column of Squads.

Pl. 67, Par. 376.

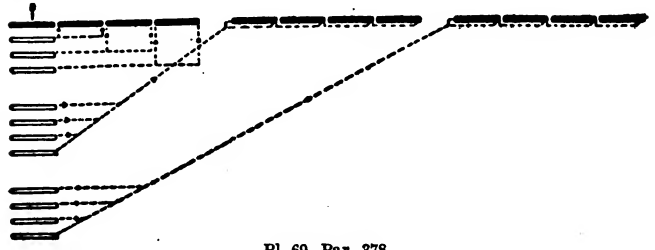
381. 1. *Battalions*, *first* (*fourth*) *company*, *squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Guide* (*right*, *left* or *center*).

Each battalion marches in column of squads by moving the designated company by squads in the direction indicated.

Digitized by Google



Pl. 68, Par. 378.



Pl. 69, Par. 378.

LINE OF MASSES.

382. In all formations into line of masses, whether by simultaneous or successive movement, the adjutant or sergeant major of each battalion posts the guides of its leading company.

To Form Line of Masses.

383. Being in column of squads: 1. *Line of masses to the right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH.***

The first battalion ploys faced to the right; the others execute the same movement, each major commanding *march* when the head of his column is twenty-eight paces from the flank of the preceding battalion.

384. Being in column of squads: 1. *Line of masses, right* (*left*) *front into line,* 2. ***MARCH.*** (Pl. 71.)

The first battalion is closed in mass faced to the front,

first company changing direction to the right, the other battalions are marched to the right front, and each executes the same movement so as to have an interval of twenty-four paces between it and the one next on its left.

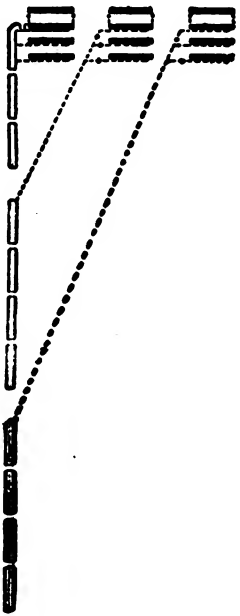
385. Being in line, line of masses may be formed faced to the flank or front by first forming column of squads and then proceeding as prescribed above.

Being in Line of Masses, to Extend or Close Intervals.

386. To extend intervals, the colonel designates the base battalion, and commands: 1. *Extend*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The base battalion stands fast; the other battalions extend, marching by the flank and inclining slightly to the rear, and when they have gained the full interval, execute squads right or left and are halted on the line.

387. Intervals are closed on the same principles: 1. *Close*, 2. ***MARCH.***



Pl. 71, Par. 384.

To Align the Line of Masses.

Pl. 70, Par. 383.

388. If necessary to rectify the alignment, the colonel causes the guides of the first company of one of the battalions to be established on the desired line and commands: *Align your battalions.*

The adjutant or sergeant major of each of the other battalions posts the guides of the leading company on the established line; the majors dress their battalions toward the point of rest.

The first company of each battalion is dressed up to the guides; each of the other companies is dressed at close distance.

If the new line be established at considerable distance from

the battalions, each major moves his battalion to its new position before dressing it.

Movements of Masses.

389. The line of masses *advances*, *halts*, and *faces* or *marches to the rear*, by the same commands and means as the regiment in line.

Being in Line of Masses, to Face to or March by the Flank.

390. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH***, 3. ***HALT;*** or, 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH***, 5. *Guide* (*right* or *left*).

The battalions preserve the distance of twenty-four paces.

The Line of Masses Marching by the Flank, to Change Direction.

391. Marching in quick time: 1. *Change direction to the right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH.***

The leading battalion changes direction to the right in double time; the others, at the command of their majors, change direction similarly, on the same ground as the first.

The Line of Masses Marching by the Flank, to form or March in Line of Masses to the Right or Left.

392. 1. *Squads right* (*left*), 2. ***MARCH***, 3. ***HALT;*** or 3. *Full step*, 4. ***MARCH***, 5. *Guide* (*right*, *left* or *center*).

Being Line of Masses, to March in Column of Squads.

393. Being at a halt: 1. *Column of squads*, 2. *First* (*Fourth*) *company, first battalion*, 3. *Squads right*, 4. ***MARCH***, or, 2. *First* (*Fourth*) *company, third battalion*, 3. *Squads left*, 4. ***MARCH.***

The designated battalion executes the movement; each of the others successively executes the movement and inclines to the right or left so as to follow the preceding battalion at the prescribed distance.

Being in Line of Masses, to Form Column of Masses Faced to the Front.

394. 1. *Column of masses on first* (*third*) *battalion*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The first battalion stands fast or is halted; the second is placed in mass in rear of the first, and the third in rear of the second.

If the third battalion be designated, the second takes position in rear of the third, the first in rear of the second.

Each major may maneuver his battalion into position in mass or in column of squads. The adjutant or sergeant major of each battalion moves in advance to indicate the point where his battalion moves by the flank or changes direction to enter the column.

Digitized by Google

Being in Column of Masses, to Form Front into Line of Masses.

395. 1. *Line of masses, right (left) front into line,* 2. ***MARCH.***

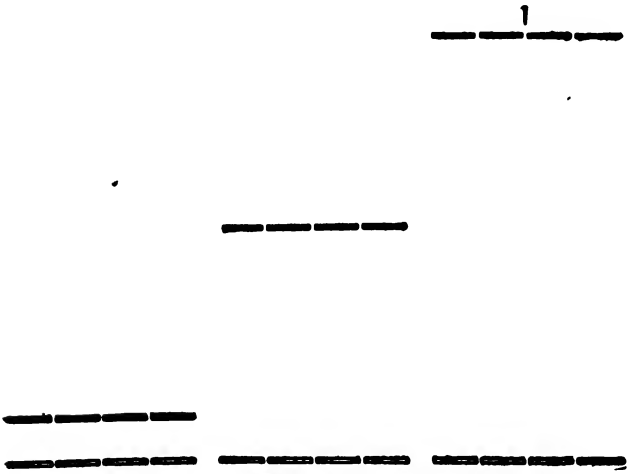
The first battalion stands fast or is halted; the second and third battalions are moved in mass or in column of squads to their places, the second on the right of the first, the third on the right of the second.

ORDER IN ECHELON.

396. Being in line at a halt, to advance in echelon, the colonel designates the base battalion, and commands: 1. *Form echelon at (so many) yards,* 2. ***MARCH.***

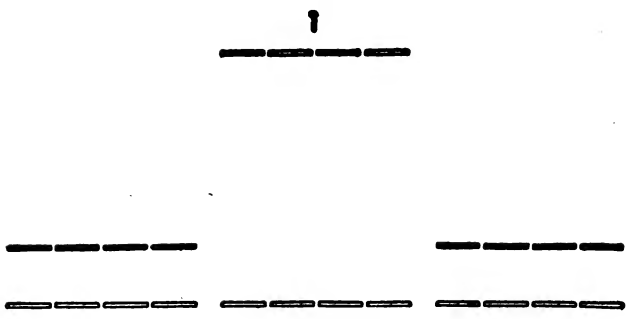
At the command *march*, the designated battalion advances in line. The other battalions stand fast; each is put in march when it has the specified distance from the one next preceding.

A file closer from each rear battalion marches at the specified distance directly in rear of the guide on the nearest flank of the preceding battalion; each rear battalion marches abreast of and preserves the interval of twenty-four paces from such file closer.



Pl. 72, Par. 396.

Digitized by Google



Pl. 73, Par. 396.

397. The regiment in echelon *advances*, *halts*, *faces* or *marches to the rear* or *to the flank* by the same commands as when in line.

Being in Echelon of Battalions, to Form Line.

398. The colonel designates the base battalion and commands: 1. *Form line*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The designated battalion halts or stands fast; the others form on the line of the one designated by moving to the front or rear.

A general alignment is given if necessary.

EXTENDED ORDER.

399. When the regiment is in three lines the leading battalion furnishes its own support and reserve; the second and third battalions form the second and third lines respectively at six hundred and sixteen hundred yards in rear of the reserve of the leading battalion.

A battalion is said to be in the fighting line when it has any part in the firing line. This rule applies to larger commands.

When the regiment is in two lines, two battalions constitute the fighting line; the other is posted as a regimental reserve about six hundred yards in rear of the battalion reserves of the first echelon.

The reserves may be posted in rear of the center, or in rear of one or both flanks, of the firing line.

Digitized by Google

When in brigade the regiment may also be extended in one echelon, each battalion furnishing its own support and reserve.

The colonel followed by his staff and orderlies takes post in rear of the center of the fighting line and on line with its reserves; if called elsewhere he leaves some one to tell where he may be found.

The colonel superintends the action and directs the majors of the second and third lines when to reinforce.

Unless he specifies the formations for battalions not in the fighting line, the majors adopt the formations they deem best suited to the ground and other circumstances.

Digitized by Google

THE BRIGADE.

CLOSE ORDER.

400. The brigade consists of three regiments, but the rules prescribed are applicable to a less or greater number; it is commanded by a brigadier general.

401. Regiments in line are designated *right*, *center* and *left;* or, if one be in rear, *right*, *left*, and *rear;* in column, they are designated *leading*, *center* and *rear*. Regiments are also designated by the names of their colonels.

Unless otherwise directed by the general, the regiments are posted according to the rank of the colonels; in line, from right to left, the senior on the right; in two or three lines by regiments, the senior in the first line, the junior in the rear line; in column, from head to rear, the senior at the head.

The interval between regiments is forty-eight paces.

402. In line, the general takes post one hundred paces in front of the center of the brigade; in column, at the head of the brigade.

The staff is six paces in rear of the general in the following order from right to left: officers of the general staff corps, adjutant general, aids, others in order or rank The flag and orderlies are three paces in rear of the staff.

403. The drill exercises should be limited to movements used in campaign.

The regulations for the evolution of the regiment are applicable to the brigade.

In moving into position, the regiments and battalions are habitually marched in column of squads by the shortest practicable lines, usually in route step. The major of the base battalion when indicated, if marching, commands: ***ATTENTION;*** each of the other majors commands *attention*, on approaching the point where he gives his commands for placing his battalion in position in the new formation. Each major commands: ***REST,*** when his battalion is in position.

404. When the orders of the general to a regimental commander are communicated by staff officers, the name of the regimental commander or the permanent designation of the regiment is mentioned.

Digitized by Google

These orders should be explicit and should cover the following points.

First. The maneuver to be executed by the brigade.

Second. The particular formation the regiment is to take; as *column of squads, column of companies, line of masses*, etc. When the formation is not specified, the regiment forms in line.

Third. When forming the brigade in two or more lines by regiment, the number of lines, the distance between the lines, the line in which the regiment is to form, and its point of rest.

When necessary, staff officers are sent to indicate the point of rest for each line.

Fourth. Whether the right or left of the regiment is to connect with the left or right of another regiment that precedes it on the line.

Fifth. Whether the right or left flank of the regiment will be exposed.

EXAMPLES OF ORDERS AND MOVEMENTS.

Being in Column of Squads, to Form Front into Line.

405. The general sends orders as follows:

To each colonel: *The brigade to form front into line;* to the leading regiment: *Form right front into line;* to the center regiment: *Form left front into line, your right connecting with left of leading regiment;* to the rear regiment: *Form right front into line, your left connecting with the right of leading regiment, right flank exposed.*

The colonel of the leading regiment forms it right front into line; the colonel of the center regiment marches it forward to the line, to the left of the leading regiment, so as to have an interval of forty-eight paces, and forms it left front into line; the colonel of the rear regiment marches it forward to the line, to the right of the leading regiment, and forms it right front into line, making such disposition on the right for the protection of the flank as will best suit the nature of the ground and conditions presented.

On the same principles the regiment may be formed front into line, in any order.

Being in Column of Squads, to Form Line to the Right or Left.

406. The general sends orders: *Form line to the right (left).*

[illegible] regiment forms line to the right.

To form in two or three lines, the general sends orders [illegible]olonel: *Form in two* (or *three*) *lines to the right* (*left*), *at* [illegible] *paces distance.*

Digitized by Google

The colonel of the leading regiment forms his regiment in two lines to the right; the colonels of the rear regiments form them in two lines, each when his first battalion has closed to forty-eight paces from the right flank of the first line of the regiment preceding. Each colonel directs the major of his third battalion to form it as the second line at the specified distance.

408. According to the same principles, the brigade may be formed in one or more lines of masses or lines of columns of squads; or one or two regiments may be given a designated formation.

To March in Line

409. The general sends orders: *Advance in line* (or *such formation*), (*such*) *battalion*, (*such*) *regiment, the base battalion.*

The orders having been communicated, and the proper disposition having been made in each regiment, the general causes the *forward* to be sounded.

When in two or three lines, the second and third lines preserve their positions relative to the first line.

To Halt.

410. The general causes the *halt* to be sounded, which is repeated and each regiment is halted.

To March to the Rear.

411. The general sends orders: *March to the rear*, (*such*) *battalion*, (*such*) *regiment, the base battalion.*

Each colonel causes his regiment to face to the rear.

The general then causes the *forward* to be sounded.

The brigade being in two lines, the base battalion will be in the late second line, now the first. The designation of the battalion and regiment refers to its position in line when marching to the rear.

412. The line of masses or line of columns of squads marches according to the same principles as when in line.

To March by the Flank.

413. Being in line or line of columns, the general sends orders: *March by the right* (*left*) *flank.*

Each colonel faces his command to the right by turning by squads. The general then causes the *forward* to be sounded.

When in more than one line, the lines retain their for-

designations; the first battalion of the first line is the base battalion; the other line or lines maintain the same relative positions as at the beginning of the movement.

414. To re-form the line when in line of masses, or line of columns of squads, the general sends orders: *Re-form line to the right (left) front.*

Each colonel forms his regiment in line in the indicated direction.

415. When at close interval, the general sends orders: *Re-form line, (such) battalion, (such) regiment, the base battalion.*

The colonel of the designated regiment causes it to take deploying intervals and form line; the other colonels cause their regiments to move by the flank until opposite their positions, take deploying intervals, and form line.

Change of Front.

416. Changes of front are usually executed by forming in column of squads and then forming front into line.

If in two or three lines, the simplest means are used for moving the second and third lines to their new positions.

THE BRIGADE IN BATTLE.

417. The formation depends upon whether the brigade is acting alone or with other troops, and varies with each case to suit the extent and character of the front to be occupied.

418. The regiments may all be formed side by side, each with two battalions in the fighting line and one as regimental reserve; the battalion in the line of regimental reserves performing the functions of the second line and following the reserves of the preceding battalions at about six hundred yards. In this case there is no brigade reserve unless furnished by another brigade.

419. Two regiments may be placed abreast, formed as above, and the third regiment placed about one thousand yards in rear of the preceding regimental reserves; being used as a brigade reserve and forming the third line.

If the brigade approaches the field of battle marching in column of squads, the general may order the leading regiments on the fighting line, without regimental reserves, and supply a battalion from the rear regiment to each regiment in the fighting line as a reserve. This formation is open to objection of speedily integrating the rear regiment, and is resorted to only when id extension of front is of the first importance.

Digitized by Google

420. For a more powerful attack, the regiments may be formed side by side, each regiment in three lines. The colonels avoid calling on their second battalions prematurely; the third battalions should not enter action without orders from the general.

421. The general makes such changes in the foregoing formations as are rendered necessary by the character of the action and the nature of the ground.

422. The general has no fixed position, but always indicates where reports will be received.

423. If compelled to give an order to a battalion commander, the general should inform the colonel as soon as practicable.

424. The general may direct when the troops composing the first line shall pass from close to extended order, or this may be left to the discretion of the regimental and battalion commanders; a reserve need not necessarily be posted in rear of the line; frequently it may be advantageously formed in echelon with that line.

To Withdraw the Brigade.

425. The general sends orders to the colonels: *Withdraw* and *form in one* (or *two*) *line on* (*such*) *battalion*, (*such*) *regiment;* or, *Withdraw and form in column on* (*such*) *battalion*, (*such*) *regiment.*

The general indicates the position to be occupied by the designated battalion and the colonels add the necessary commands. The battalions form in the same order as before the deployment, or the general may change this order.

426. If the order be to *form in column*, column of squads is understood, unless the general indicates another formation.

THE DIVISION.

427. The division consists of three brigades of infantry and such troops of other arms as may be assigned to it; the rules prescribed are applicable to a less or greater number of brigades; it is commanded by a major general.

The regulations for the evolutions of the brigade apply to the division.

428. In line, the division commander takes post one hundred and fifty paces in front of the center of the division; in column, at the head of the division.

Digitized by Google

429. The brigades in division are designated and posted as prescribed for regiments in brigade.

The rules prescribed for the post of the staff of a brigade commander apply to the staff of a division commander.

430. The division is formed in one, two or three lines, by brigade.

The interval between brigades is seventy-two paces, which is increased when interval is left for artillery.

431. The orders of the division commander are communicated by staff officers; the orders should cover the following points: The particular formation for each brigade and its point of rest; the direction in which the line is to extend; the distance between lines and the point of rest for each line; the name of the brigade commander or the permanent number of the brigade is mentioned.

THE DIVISION IN BATTLE.

432. The division may be formed with one or two brigades in the fighting line and the others in the reserve, or the three brigades may be placed in the fighting line.

The artillery takes the position assigned by the division commander.

Officers in command of the reserve adopt such formations as do not unnecessarily interfere with the maneuvers of the other arms.

433. The division commander conducts the action on the principles prescribed for smaller commands.

434. The officers of the reserve are constantly on the alert to prevent any panic that may arise among the troops of the first line spreading to their own.

435. The reserve is not necessarily united; the regiments and battalions composing it may be posted in rear of different parts of the first line.

THE CORPS.

436. The corps consists of three divisions.

The principles described for the evolutions of the division apply to the corps or a larger command.

Digitized by Google

CEREMONIES.

GENERAL RULES.

437. For ceremonies troops are arranged from right to left in line, or from head to rear in column, in the following order: First, infantry; second, field artillery; third, cavalry. Artillery serving as infantry is posted as infantry. Dismounted cavalry and marines are on the left of the infantry in the order named. Engineer troops are on the right of the command to which they are attached. Detachments of the hospital corps and of the signal corps are assigned to place according to the nature of their duties. In the same arm, regulars, volunteers, and militia are posted in line from right to left, or in column from head to rear, in the order named.

When forming for ceremonies, the companies of the battalion, the battalions of the regiment, the regiments of the brigade, the brigades of the division, and the divisions of the corps are posted from right to left in line, or from head to rear in column, in the order of rank of their respective commanders present, the senior on the right or at the head.

438. General, field, and staff officers are mounted. At battalion parade or review, officers may be dismounted at the discretion of the commanding officer.

Staff officers, when not otherwise prescribed, draw and return saber with their chief.

When but one staff officer is present he takes post in rear and one pace to the right of his chief.

439. In regiments, the staff is six paces in rear of the colonel, and is arranged from right to left as follows: Adjutant, other officers according to rank, senior on the right. In column, the lieutenant colonel takes post on the right of the staff.

440. In battalion, the sergeant major takes post on the right of the noncommissioned staff as soon as he has posted the last guide, passing in rear of the file closers in quick time.

441. A noncommissioned officer in command of a company, after aligning it at the formation of the battalion takes post or

Digitized by Google

the right of the right guide; he takes the post of the captain when the battalion is in column. At parade, before bringing the company to parade rest, he comes to the trail, steps two paces to the front and faces to the left, retaining the piece at the trail; having given his commands, he resumes his post and comes to parade rest.

In exercises in the manual, noncommissioned officers commanding companies or subdivisions execute only the order and parade rest; in rendering honors, the present; while marching, they carry their pieces in the same position as the men.

REVIEWS.

GENERAL RULES FOR REVIEWS.

442. The adjutant or adjutant general posts men, or otherwise marks the points where the column changes direction, in such manner that its flanks in passing shall be about twelve paces from the reviewing officer.

443. The post of the reviewing officer, usually opposite the center of the line, is marked by a flag.

444. The reviewing officer, his staff, and others at the reviewing stand salute the color as it passes, whether the color salutes or not; those with arms not drawn salute by uncovering; the reviewing officer alone returns the salute of the commanding officer of the troops, and of such commanding officer only.

445. The staff of the reviewing officer is in single rank, six paces in rear of him, in the following order from right to left: Officers of the general staff corps, adjutant general, aids, then the other members of the staff in the order of rank, the senior on the right; the flag and orderlies place themselves three paces in rear of the staff, the flag on the right.

446. Officers of the same or higher grade and distinguished personages invited to accompany the reviewing officer place themselves on his left; their staffs and orderlies place themselves respectively on the left of the staff and orderlies of the reviewing officer; all others who accompany the reviewing officer place themselves on the left of his staff, their orderlies in rear. A staff officer is designated to escort distinguished personages and to indicate to them their proper positions.

447. While riding around the troops, the reviewing officer may direct his staff, flag, and orderlies to remain at the post of the reviewing officer, or that only his personal staff and flag

shall accompany him; in either of such cases the commanding officer alone accompanies the reviewing officer. If the reviewing officer is accompanied by his entire staff, the staff officers of the commander place themselves on the right of the staff of the reviewing officer.

The staff officers in passing around the troops, or in review, ride in one or more ranks, according to their number.

448. The staff, flag, and orderlies of brigade, division and corps commanders place themselves in the order prescribed for the staff, flag, and orderlies of the reviewing officer.

449. When the commanding officer of the troops turns out of the column, his post is on the right of the reviewing officer; his staff, in single rank, on the right of the staff already there; his flag and orderlies in rear of his staff.

When the column has passed, the commanding officer, without changing position, salutes the reviewing officer, and then with his staff and orderlies rejoins his command.

If the person reviewing the command is not mounted, the commanding officer and his staff, on turning out of the column after passing the reviewing officer, dismount preparatory to taking post on the right of the reviewing officer and his staff. In such case the salute of a commanding officer, prior to rejoining his command, is made, with the hand, before remounting.

450. A brigade commander, while the reviewing officer is not in front or in rear of his brigade, may cause it to stand *at ease*, *rest*, or *stack arms* and *fall out*, and resume *attention* so as not to interfere with the ceremony.

451. The colonels repeat the commands of their brigade commander.

Whenever the colonel faces the line to give commands the majors face at the same time; they resume their front after seeing the movement executed. All such commands are executed when they have been repeated by the majors. When the command repeated is *present arms*, the lieutenant colonel and the colonel's staff salute at the command of the colonel; the major's staff salutes at the command of the major; the colonel and majors salute after resuming their front; each staff returns to the carry or order at the command of its chief. The same rules apply to the colonels and majors and to the general's, colonel's and major's staffs whenever the brigade commander faces the line to give commands.

When passing in review, the staff of each commander salutes and returns to the carry with him.

Digitized by Google

452. When the general, colonel, or major faces the line to give commands, the staff and orderlies do not change position.

453. When the rank of the reviewing officer entitles him to the honor, each color salutes at the command *present arms*, given or repeated by the major of the battalion with which it is posted; and again in passing in review.

454. The band of each regiment plays while the reviewing officer is passing in front of and in rear of the regiment.

Each band, immediately after passing the reviewing officer, turns out of the column, takes post in front of him, continues to play until its regiment has passed, then ceases playing and follows in rear of its regiment; the band of the following regiment commences to play as soon as the preceding band has ceased.

While marching in review, but one band in each brigade plays at a time, and but one band at a time when within one hundred paces of the reviewing officer.

455. In line, when the color salutes, the march, flourishes, or ruffles are sounded by all the field music; in passing in review, by the field music with the band that is halted in front of the reviewing officer, the band continuing to play.

456. The formation for review may be modified to suit the ground, and the *present arms* and the ride around the line by the reviewing officer may be dispensed with.

If the post of the reviewing officer is on the left of the columns the troops march in review with the guide left; the commanding officer and his staff turn out of the column to the left, taking post as prescribed above, but to the left of the reviewing officer; in saluting, the captains give the command: 1. *Eyes*, 2. *LEFT*.

457. Except in the review of a single battalion, the troops pass in review in quick time only.

458. In reviews of brigades or larger commands, each battalion, after its rear has passed the reviewing officer fifty paces, takes the double time for one hundred yards, in order not to interfere with the march of the column in rear.

459. The troops, having passed the reviewing officer, return to their camps by the most practicable route, being careful not to delay the march of the troops in rear of them.

460. When desirable that an organization should be reviewed before an inspector junior in rank to the commanding officer, the commanding officer receives the review, and is accompanied by the inspector who takes post on his left.

Digitized by Google

BATTALION REVIEW.

461. The battalion being in line, the major faces to the front; the reviewing officer takes his post; the major turns about and commands: 1. *Prepare for review*, 2. *Open ranks*, 3. ***MARCH***, 4. ***FRONT.*** The staff remains in position facing to the front.

Ranks are opened; the adjutant, having verified the alignment, moves to the center and front as at the formation of the battalion and takes his post on the right of the staff; when the adjutant starts for his post the major commands *front*, and turns about.

The reviewing officer moves a few paces toward the major and halts; the major turns about and commands: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS***, and again turns about and salutes.

The reviewing officer returns the salute; the major turns about, brings the battalion to order arms and again turns to the front.

The reviewing officer approaches to about six paces from the major, the latter salutes, joins him, takes post on his right and accompanies him around the battalion. The reviewing officer proceeds to the right of the band, passes in front of the company officers to the left of the line and returns to the right, passing in rear of the file closers and the band. The reviewing officer and those accompanying him salute the color when passing in front of it.

While the reviewing officer is going around the battalion, the band plays, ceasing when he leaves the right to return directly to his post.

On arriving again at the right of the line, the major salutes, halts, and when the reviewing officer and staff have passed, moves directly to his post in front of the battalion, faces it, closes ranks and commands: 1. *At trail, squads right*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Battalion*, 4. ***HALT***, 5. *Pass in review*, 6. *Forward*, 7. ***MARCH.***

At the seventh command, the column moves off, the band playing; without command from the major, the column changes direction at the points indicated, and column of companies at full distance with guide to the right is formed successively to the left at the second change of direction; the major takes his post twenty-four paces in front of the band, immediately after the second change; the band having passed the reviewing officer, turns to the left out of the column, takes post in front of and facing the reviewing officer, and remains there until the review terminates.

462. The major and staff salute, turn the head as in *eyes right*, and look toward the reviewing officer when the major is at

Digitized by Google

from him; they return to the carry and turn the head and eyes to the front when the major has passed six paces beyond him.

Without facing about, each captain commands: 1. *Eyes*, in time to add: 2. ***RIGHT***, when at six paces from the reviewing officer and commands: ***FRONT***, when at six paces beyond him. At the command *eyes*, company officers execute the first motion of present saber; at the command *right*, all turn the head and eyes, to the right and the company officers complete present saber, at the command *front*, all turn the head and eyes to the front, the company officers resuming the carry saber.

The noncommissioned staff, noncommissioned officers in command of subdivisions and the drum major, salute, turn the head and eyes, return to the front, resume the carry or drop the hand, at the points prescribed for the major. Officers and noncommissioned staff officers without saber or sword salute with the hand. Noncommissioned officers in command of subdivisions render the rifle salute. Guides charged with step, trace, and direction, do not execute *eyes right*.

If the reviewing officer is entitled to a salute from the color, the color salutes when at six paces from him, and is raised when at six paces beyond him.

The reviewing officer returns the salutes of only the major and the color.

463. The major, having saluted, takes post on the right of the reviewing officer, remains there until the rear of the battalion has passed, then salutes and rejoins his battalion. The band ceases to play when the column has completed its second change of direction after passing the reviewing officer.

464. When the battalion arrives at its original position in column, the major commands: 1. *Double time*, 2 ***MARCH***.

The band plays in double time.

The battalion passes in review as before, except that in double time the command *eyes right* is omitted and there is no saluting except by the major when he leaves the reviewing officer.

The review terminates when the rear company has passed the reviewing officer; the band then ceases to play, and, unless otherwise directed by the major, returns to the position it occupied before marching in review, or is dismissed; the major rejoins the battalion and brings it to *quick time*. The battalion then executes such movements as the reviewing officer may have directed, or is marched to its parade ground and dismissed.

Marching past in double time may, in the discretion of the re-

viewing officer, be omitted; the review terminates when the major rejoins his battalion.

REGIMENTAL REVIEW.

465. The regiment is formed in line, or in line of masses.

In Line.

466. The regiment being in line, the colonel faces to the front; the reviewing officer takes his post; the colonel turns about and commands: 1. *Prepare for review*, 2. *Open ranks*, 3. ***MARCH.***

Ranks are opened; each battalion adjutant takes post on the right of the staff of his major; the review proceeds as in the battalion, substituting "colonel" for "major," and "regiment" for "battalion."

At the second change of direction each major takes post twenty-four paces in front of his leading company. The majors do not turn out of column after passing the reviewing officer.

In passing in review the band marches with its rear rank thirty-six paces in front of the leading company.

The rear of the column having passed the reviewing officer, the battalions, unless otherwise directed, are marched to their parade grounds and dismissed.

In Line of Masses.

467. With the following modifications, the rules for the review of a regiment in line apply:

Ranks are not opened. The colonel commands: *Prepare for review*, and faces to the front.

When the reviewing officer has passed around the regiment the colonel commands: 1. *Pass in review*, 2. *Column of squads*, 3. *First company, first battalion*, 4. *Squads right*, 5. ***MARCH.***

Column of companies at full distance with guide right is formed successively to the left, at the second change of direction.

Each battalion adjutant takes post on the right of the staff of his major when the battalion is established on the line.

BRIGADE REVIEW.

468. The brigade being in line of masses, the reviewing officer takes his post; ranks are not opened; the brigade commander commands: *Prepare for review*, and faces to the front.

The reviewing officer then approaches the brigade commander and when at thirty paces distance halts: the latter the

mands: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS;*** the brigade being at present he turns to the front and salutes.

The reviewing officer having returned the salute, the brigade commander faces the brigade, commands: 1. *Order*, 2. ***ARMS.***

The reviewing officer approaches to about six paces from the brigade commander; the latter salutes; they then proceed to the right of the brigade, passing in front of the colonel of the first regiment, to the right of the line, thence around the brigade, passing to the left in rear of the majors, and to the right in rear of the file closers.

The colonels remain at their posts facing to the front while the reviewing officer is passing around the brigade. When the reviewing officer leaves the right of the line, the brigade commander salutes, returns by the shortest line to his post, faces the brigade and commands: 1. *Pass in review*, 2. ***MARCH.***

The column of squads and column of companies are formed, and colonels take post, as in regimental review.

The brigade commander takes post twenty-four paces in front of the leading colonel when at one hundred paces from the reviewing officer.

The brigade commander, after saluting the reviewing officer, turns out of the column and takes post on his right. Colonels do not turn out of the column.

The review terminates when the last battalion has passed the reviewing officer.

DIVISION REVIEW.

469. The division is formed in one, two, or three lines of masses.

Upon the arrival of the reviewing officer, the general commanding the division joins and accompanies him, and causes the signal *attention* to be sounded, which is taken up in the right brigade of the first line.

The reviewing officer receives the salute of each brigade when he arrives on its right, except when he approaches a brigade from its left or front, in which case he receives the salute as prescribed in the Brigade Review.

In One Line.

470. The reviewing officer receives the salute of the right brigade, passes along its front from right to left, then receives the salute of the next brigade and so on to the left of the division, thence in rear of the division to the right and back to his post.

Each brigade commander salutes, facing to the front, then faces his brigade and brings it to order arms, and remains at his post.

The reviewing officer having passed around the division, the general commanding the division causes the signal *attention* to be sounded.

The commander of the right brigade, when the signal *forward* is sounded, gives the commands for passing in review as in Brigade Review.

Each of the other brigades is called to attention and put in march in time to follow the next preceding at a distance of about one hundred paces.

The division commander, with his staff, flag, and orderlies, takes post twenty-four paces in front of the commander of the leading brigade. Brigade commanders do not turn out of the column.

The review terminates as prescribed in the Brigade Review.

In Two or Three Lines.

471. The reviewing officer passes around each line in succession, beginning with the right brigade of the first line.

With this exception, the rules prescribed for single line apply.

472. The review of a larger command than a division is conducted on the same principles, or the troops may be marched in review in column of masses.

GARRISON REVIEW.

473. A review of a body of troops less than a brigade, composed of different arms, is conducted on the principles laid down for a regiment.

The senior officer present commands the review; the senior officer present with each arm commands that arm. The troops of each arm form on the line according to the principles prescribed in the Drill Regulations for that arm.

Each commander gives the commands necessary to carry out the orders of the officer commanding the review.

Passing in review, mounted troops will not be put in march until the rear element of the foot troops has completed the second change of direction. The commanding officer, having saluted, turns out and joins the reviewing officer. The other commanders do not turn out of the column.

Digitized by Google

PARADES.

BATTALION PARADE.

474. At the *assembly*, the companies form on their respective parade grounds, and are inspected by their captains; the inspection being completed, *adjutant's call* is sounded, at which the battalion is formed in line on its parade ground.

The major takes post at a convenient distance in front of the center, and facing the battalion; his staff, except the adjutant, three paces in his rear in the order of rank from right to left.

The adjutant having commanded guides posts, informs the first captain: *Sir, the line is formed.* The captains, commencing on the right successively face about and command: 1. "A" (or *other*) *company*, 2. *Parade*, 3. ***REST,*** resume their front and take the position of parade rest; the adjutant faces to the front, commands: ***SOUND OFF***, and, if dismounted, takes the position of parade rest.

The band, playing in quick time, passes in front of the captains to the left of the line and back to its post on the right, when it ceases playing. At evening parade, when the band ceases playing, *retreat* is sounded by the field music, and following the last note, and while the flag is being lowered, the band plays The Star Spangled Banner.

Just before the last note of retreat the adjutant comes to attention and faces to the left, and, as the last note ends, commands; 1. *Battalion*, 2. ***ATTENTION,*** and resumes his front.

The major and staff, if dismounted, stand at parade rest with arms folded while the band is playing and resume attention with the adjutant preparatory to the playing of The Star Spangled Banner; or, if the parade be not at retreat, they come to attention with the adjutant before ranks are opened.

When the music ceases the adjutant faces to the left and commands (the battalion being at attention): 1. *Open ranks*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. ***FRONT;*** or, if the battalion be not at attention: 1. *Battalion*, 2. ***ATTENTION***, 3. *Open ranks*, 4. ***MARCH***, 5. ***FRONT.*** Ranks having been opened, he moves at a trot (if dismounted, in quick time) along the line and three paces in front of the company officers to the center, turns to the right and halts midway between the major and the battalion, faces it and commands: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS.*** He then turns about, salutes the major, and reports: *Sir, the parade is formed.* The major returns the salute and directs the adjutant: *Take your post, sir.* The adjutant moves at a trot (if dismounted, in quick time), passes by the major's right, and t[illegible]ost on the right of the staff.

The adjutant having taken his post, the major draws saber, commands: 1. *Order*, 2. ***ARMS,*** and adds such exercises in the manual of arms as he may desire, concluding with *order arms*. The officers and color guard, having once executed order arms, remain in that position during the exercises in the manual.

The major then directs the adjutant: *Receive the reports, sir.* The adjutant, passing by the major's right, advances at a trot (if dismounted, in quick time), toward the center of the line, halts midway between it and the major, and commands: ***REPORT.***

The captains, in succession from the right, salute, then report: "A" (or *other*) *company, present or accounted for;* or, "A" (or *other*) *company, (so many) officers* or *enlisted men absent,* and resume the order saber. The adjutant returns the salutes of the captains.

The report made, the adjutant turns about, salutes, and reports: *Sir, all are present or accounted for;* or, *Sir, (so many) officers* or *enlisted men are absent,* including in the absentees those from the band and field music reported to him by the drum major prior to the parade.

The major returns the salute and directs: *Publish the orders, sir.*

The adjutant turns about and commands: *Attention to orders;* he then reads the orders, and commands: 1. *Officers,* 2. ***CENTER,*** 3. ***MARCH.***

At the command *center*, the company officers carry saber and face to the center. At the command *march*, the company officers close to the center and face to the front; the adjutant turns about and takes post on the right of the staff.

The officers having closed and faced to the front, the senior company officer commands: 1. *Forward,* 2. *Guide center,* 3. ***MARCH.*** The officers advance, the band playing; the left officer of the right wing is the guide, and marches on the major; the company officers are halted at six paces from the major by the senior, who commands: 1. *Officers,* 2. ***HALT.*** The officers halt and salute, returning to the carry saber with the major. The major then gives such instructions as he deems necessary and commands: 1. *Officers,* 2. ***POSTS,*** 3. *Guide center,* 4. ***MARCH.***

At the command *posts*, company officers face about.

At the command *march*, they step off and when three paces from the line the senior commands: 1. *Officers,* 2. ***HALT,*** 3. ***POSTS,*** 4. ***MARCH.***

At the command *posts*, officers face outward and at the command *march* step off in succession at four paces distance, resume their posts and order saber.

Digitized by Google

The music ceases when all officers have resumed their posts.

The major then closes rank, commands: 1. *At trail, squads right*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Battalion* 4. ***HALT,*** 5. *Pass in review*, 6. *Forward*, 7. ***MARCH***, and returns saber.

The battalion marches according to the principles of review; when the last company has passed, the ceremony is concluded.

The band continues to play while the companies are in march upon the parade ground. Companies are formed in column of squads, without halting, and marched to their respective parade grounds by their captains.

475. The major may direct the company officers to form on line with the staff, in which case the music ceases when the officers join the staff. After closing ranks the major causes the companies to pass in review under command of their first sergeants by the same commands as before. The company officers return saber with the major and remain at attention.

REGIMENTAL PARADE.

476. The regiment is formed in line or in line of masses.

In Line.

477. At the *assembly*, the companies are formed and inspected.

At *adjutant's call*, each battalion is formed in line; the battalion adjutant having taken his post in front of the center, before presenting the battalion to the major, receives the reports of the captains as prescribed in battalion parade.

When the battalions are formed, *to the color*, is sounded; the regiment is then formed in line, each major opening ranks in his battalion as soon as it is formed on the line, regulating on the base battalion; each battalion adjutant, takes post on the right of the staff of his major.

The adjutant, after indicating the point of rest, takes post facing to the left, six paces to the right of the post of the lieutenant-colonel, and draws saber; when the line is formed, he informs the first major: *Sir, the line is formed.* The majors, in succession, bring their battalions, to parade rest.

The adjutant then turns to his left, commands: ***SOUND OFF,*** and takes post, facing to the front, six paces to the right of the post of the lieutenant colonel.

The band, playing in quick time, passes in front of the adjutant and field officers to the left of the regiment and back to its on the right, when it ceases playing.

Digitized by Google

When the parade is at retreat, the adjutant turns to the left as the last note of *retreat*, is sounding, and when it is finished, commands: 1. *Battalions*, 2. ***ATTENTION*** and resumes his front; the band plays The Star Spangled Banner.

The adjutant then moves at a trot parallel to and three paces in front of the line of field officers to the center of the regiment, turns to the right and halts at a point midway between the colonel and the front rank, faces the regiment and commands: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS;*** or, if the battalions be not at attention: 1. *Battalions*, 2. ***ATTENTION,*** 3. *Present*, 4. ***ARMS,*** faces the colonel, salutes, and reports: *Sir, the parade is formed.*

The colonel returns the salute and directs the adjutant: *Take your post, sir.* The adjutant takes his post on the right of the staff, passing by the colonel's right.

The colonel draws saber, commands: 1. *Order*, 2. ***ARMS,*** and adds such exercises in the manual of arms as he may desire, concluding with *order arms.*

The colonel then directs the adjutant to receive the reports.

The adjutant advances by the right of the colonel toward the line, halts midway between the colonel and the line of majors, and commands: 1. *Adjutants*, 2. *Front and center*, 3. ***MARCH;*** or, 3. *Trot*, 4. ***MARCH.***

At the command *march*, the battalion adjutants move three paces in front of the line of majors close to the center and face to the front. The Adjutant then commands: *Report*, when the battalion adjutants, commencing on the right, salute and report: *First* (or *other*) *battalion present or accounted for;* or, *First* (or *other*) *battalion, (so many) officers and enlisted men are absent.* The adjutant returns the salutes of the battalion adjutants. The reports having been made the adjutant commands: 1. *Adjutants*, 2. *Posts*, 3. ***MARCH;*** or, 3. *Trot*, 4. ***MARCH,*** Each battalion adjutant returns to his post on the right of the staff of his major. The adjutant then faces the colonel, salutes and reports: *Sir, all are present or accounted for;* or, *Sir, (so many) officers and enlisted men are absent,* including in the absentees these from the band and field music reported to him by the drum major prior to the parade. The colonel returns the salute and directs: *Publish the orders, sir.* The adjutant faces the regiment, and, after publishing the orders, commands: 1. *Officers*, 2. ***CENTER,*** 3. ***MARCH*** and takes post as before on the right of the staff, passing by the colonel's right.

At the command *center*, the company officers carry saber and

Digitized by Google

face toward the center; each battalion staff forms line on the left of its major. At the command *march*, the company officers close to the center and face to the front.

The field officers and their staffs move by the flank to the left and right on their own line; the lieutenant-colonel, major and staff of the first battalion form in line six paces to the right of the line of company officers; the major and staff of the second battalion, and the major and staff of the third battalion, form in line six paces to the left of the company officers.

The company officers having closed and faced to the front, the senior captain commands: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide center*, 3. ***MARCH.***

The company officers advance, the band playing; the left officer of the right wing of the second battalion, or the left officer, first battalion, if there be but two battalions, is the guide and marches on the colonel.

When the company officers have advanced to the line of field officers, the field officers and their staffs advance in line with the company officers. The line is halted at six paces from the colonel by the senior officer who commands: 1. *Officers*, 2. ***HALT.*** The ceremony continues as in battalion parade.

When the colonel commands: 1. *Officers*, 2. ***POSTS,*** 3. *Guide center*, 4. ***MARCH,*** the lieutenant-colonel takes post on the right of the staff; each major moves individually to the front, turns outward, and followed by his staff takes his post by the most direct line; the company officers rejoin their commands as in battalion parade. The regiment is then marched in review and the ceremony is concluded when the last company has passed.

In Line of Masses.

478. The line is formed as prescribed in the Evolutions of Regiment. Ranks are not opened.

Each battalion adjutant takes post on the right of the staff of his major when the battalion is established on the line.

After publishing the orders the adjutant commands: 1. *Officers*, 2. ***CENTER,*** 3. ***MARCH.***

The field and staff officers form one line, closing on the center. The senior officer commands: 1. *Forward*, 2. *Guide center*, 3. ***MARCH.***

The second major is the guide and marches on the colonel.

The company officers remain at their posts with their companies.

With these exceptions the same rules apply as in the regimental parade in line.

Digitized by Google

BRIGADE PARADE.

479. The Brigade is formed in line of masses.

Bands are consolidated, or the band of the first regiment is designated to sound off. The band may be directed to sound off in place.

The adjutant-general takes post on the right of the brigade on the line of colonels.

The parade proceeds according to the principles of regimental parade in line of masses.

Regimental adjutants make their reports to the adjutant-general.

The field and staff officers form in one line on the line of the colonels, closing on the center.

The colonel of the second regiment is the guide and marches on the general.

STREET PARADES.

480. Street parades are ordinarily commanded by a person who is designated as "grand marshal." He appoints a chief of staff and aids, and issues a general order giving all necessary directions for the formation, movement and dismissal of the parade.

This order includes:

1st. The names of his staff officers, and when and where they are to report to him.

2nd. The assignment of organizations and their order in brigades and divisions, and the names and assignment of brigade commanders and marshals of divisions.

3rd. The streets upon which the different brigades and divisions form, the direction in which their lines face, where the right rests, and the size of the front of subdivisions in column.

4th. The time for each division to complete its formation and stand ready to march.

5th. The time at, and place from which the head of the parade will move, and the line of march and the direction of the guide.

6th. Honors to be paid by the troops during the march.

7th. Instructions for the dismissal of the parade.

8th. Instructions regarding uniforms.

481. The order of precedence in parade is as follows:

1. The Regular Army.
2. United States Marines.
3. United States Naval Forces.
4. United States Volunteers.

Digitized by Google

5. Organized Militia, including Naval Reserves.
6. Military organizations, uniformed and armed, not included above.
7. Military Societies.
8. Uniformed organizations of the United States and Municipalities.
9. Civic Societies.

482. The grand marshal marches at the head of the parade; his staff, chief of staff on the right, marches six paces in his rear in one or more ranks. The grand marshal is usually preceded by mounted police and a platoon of dismounted police who clear the way. The marshal of the first division marches twenty-four paces in rear of the staff of the grand marshal. All other officers take post as prescribed for review.

483. Odd numbered divisions are ordinarily formed in streets to the right of the line of march, the first division nearest the starting point, lines facing opposite the direction of the march, rights resting on the line of march. Even numbered divisions are similarly formed on the streets to the left. Their lines face in the direction of the march, rights resting on the line of march. The march may be in column of companies, platoons, sections or squads.

484. If the side streets are too narrow to allow the designated formation, divisions march out on the line of march in column of squads and form column of sections, platoons, or companies left front into line, at the double time.

485. After passing the reviewing stand all organizations take up the double time for a hundred yards to clear the way for those following. The grand marshal may review the parade, just prior to its dismissal, at some designated point beyond the reviewing stand.

INSPECTIONS.

COMPANY INSPECTION.

486. To inspect the company on its parade ground the captain causes it to open ranks and commands: 1. *Inspection*, 2. *ARMS.*

At the command *arms*, the lieutenants carry saber, and when the inspection of the front rank begins, face about, order saber and stand at ease; they may be directed to accompany the captain or assist in the inspection; upon the completion of the inspection they carry saber, face about and order saber.

Ranks are then closed, the company dismissed, rifles placed in racks, headdress and accouterments removed and the men stand

near their respective bunks; in camp they stand covered, without accouterments, in front of their tents.

The captain, accompanied by the lieutenants, then passes through and inspects the quarters. The first sergeant precedes the captain and calls the men to attention on entering the squad rooms or approaching the tents. The men stand at attention but do not salute.

If the inspection is to include an examination of the blanket rolls the captain, before dismissing the company and after inspecting the file closers, directs the lieutenants to remain in place, closes ranks, stacks arms, dresses the company back to four paces from the stacks, takes intervals and commands: 1. *Unsling*, 2. ***PACKS***, 3. *Open*, 4. ***PACKS.***

At the second command, each man unslings his roll and places it on the ground at his feet, rounded end to the front, square end of shelter half to the right.

At the fourth command, the rolls are untied, laid perpendicular to the front with the triangular end of the shelter half to the front, opened, and unrolled to the left; each man prepares the contents of his roll for inpection and resumes the attention.

The captain then returns saber, passes along the ranks and file closers as before, inspects the rolls, returns to the right, draws saber and commands: 1. *Close*, 2. ***PACKS.***

At the second command, each man, with his shelter half smoothly spread on the ground with buttons up and triangular end to the front, folds his blanket once across its length, and places it upon the shelter half; fold toward the bottom, edge one-half inch from the square end, the same amount of canvas uncovered at the top and bottom. He then places the parts of the pole on the side of the blanket next the square end of shelter half, near and parallel to the fold, end of pole about six inches from the edge of the blanket; nests the pins similarly near the opposite edge of the blanket and distributes the other articles carried in the roll; folds the triangular end and then the exposed portion of the bottom of the shelter half over the blanket.

The two men in each file roll and fasten first the roll of the front and then of the rear rank man. The file closers work similarly two and two, or with the front rank man of a blank file. Each pair stands on the folded side, rolls the blanket roll closely and buckles the straps, passing the end of the strap through both keeper and buckle, back over the buckle and under the keeper. With the roll so lying on the ground that the edge of the shelter half can just be seen when looking vertically

Digitized by Google

ward, one end is bent upward and over to meet the other, a clove hitch is taken with the guy rope first around the end to which it is attached and then around the other end, adjusting the length of rope between hitches to suit the wearer.

As soon as a file completes its two rolls each man places his roll in the position it was after being unslung, and stands at attention.

All the rolls being completed the captain commands: 1. *Sling*, 2. ***PACKS.***

At the second command, the rolls are slung, the end containing the pole to the rear.

The captain then assembles the company, takes arms and completes the inspection as before,

487. Should the inspector be other than the captain the latter opens ranks, and when the inspector approaches, brings the company to attention, faces to the front and salutes in person. The salute acknowledged, the captain carries saber, faces about, commands: 1. *Inspection*, 2. ***ARMS,*** and again faces to the front.

The inspection proceeds as before; the captain returns saber and accompanies the inspector as soon as the latter passes him.

BATTALION INSPECTION.

488. If there be both inspection and review, the inspection may either precede or follow the review.

The battalion being in column of companies at full distance, all officers dismounted, the major commands: 1. *Prepare for inspection*, 2. ***MARCH.***

At the first command, each captain commands: *Open ranks.*

At the command *march*, the ranks are opened in each company, as explained in the School of the Company.

The field musicians join their companies.

The drum major conducts the band, if not already there, to its position in rear of the column, and opens ranks.

The staff officers form a line equal to the front of the column, fifteen paces in front of the leading company, the adjutant on the right, the others in order of rank, the senior next to the adjutant; the noncommissioned staff form in a similar manner, three paces in rear of the staff officers, the sergeant major on the right; the color guard in one rank marches to the front and takes post three paces in rear of the center of the line of the noncommissioned staff.

Digitized by Google

The major takes post in front of the center of the column, three paces in front of the staff.

489. Field and staff officers senior in rank to the inspector do not take post in front of the column, but accompany him.

The inspector inspects the major and, accompanied by the latter, inspects the staff officers.

The major then commands: ***REST,*** returns saber, and with his staff accompanies the inspector.

490. The inspector, commencing at the head of the column, makes a minute inspection of the noncommissioned staff, color guard, and the arms, accouterments, dress and ammunition of each soldier of the several companies in succession, and inspects the band.

The adjutant gives the necessary commands for the inspection of the noncommissioned staff, color guard, and band.

The noncommissioned staff and color guard may be dismissed as soon as inspected.

491. As the inspector approaches each company, its captain commands: 1. *Company,* 2. ***ATTENTION,*** 3. *Inspection,* 4. ***ARMS,*** and faces to the front; as soon as inspected, he returns saber and accompanies the inspector. The inspection proceeds as in Company Inspection. At its completion the captain closes ranks and commands: ***REST.*** Upon intimation from the inspector, the major may direct that the company be marched to its parade ground and dismissed.

In a long column, the rearmost companies may be permitted to stack arms and fall out; before the inspector approaches they fall in and take arms.

The band plays during the inspection of the companies.

492. When the inspector approaches the band, the adjutant commands: 1. *Inspection,* 2. ***INSTRUMENTS.***

As the inspector approaches him, each man raises his instrument in front of the body, reverses it so as to show both sides, and then returns it to its former position.

Company musicians execute inspection similarly.

493. At inspection of quarters, the inspector is accompanied by the captain and followed by the other officers, or by such of them as he may designate; the men, without accouterments, stand uncovered near their respective bunks; in camp, they stand covered, without accouterments, in front of their tents; upon the approach of the inspector, the first sergeant commands: ***ATTENTION,*** salutes and leads the way through the quarters; the other men do not salute.

Digitized by Google

REGIMENTAL INSPECTION.

494. The commands and means are the same as prescribed for a battalion.

The lieutenant colonel, adjutant, and other staff officers of the colonel in order of rank, form a line in the order named equal to the front of the column, fifteen paces in front of the major of the first battalion; the noncommissioned staff form in a similar manner three paces in rear of the staff officers, the sergeant major on the right; the color guard takes post three paces in rear of the center of the line of noncommissioned staff. The colonel takes post opposite the center of the column, six paces in front of his staff.

The inspector inspects the colonel and, accompanied by the latter, inspects the lieutenant colonel and staff officers.

The colonel then commands: ***REST,*** returns saber, and with the lieutenant colonel and staff accompanies the inspector.

The inspector, commencing at the head of the column, makes a minute inspection of the noncommissioned staff, color guard, each battalion in succession, and the band.

On the approach of the inspector, each major brings his battalion to attention and accompanies the inspector through his battalion as in Battalion Inspection. At the completion of the inspection, upon intimation from the inspector, the colonel may direct that the battalion be marched to its parade ground and dismissed.

Each company is brought to *rest* as soon as inspected.

The adjutant gives the necessary commands for the regimental noncommissioned staff, color guard, and band.

Each battalion adjutant gives the necessary commands for the inspection of the battalion noncommissioned staff.

MUSTER.

REGIMENTAL BATTALION, OR COMPANY MUSTER.

495. Muster is preceded by an inspection, and, when practicable, by a review.

The adjutant is provided with the muster roll of the field, staff, and band; the surgeon, with the hospital roll; each captain, with the roll of his company. A list of absentees, alphabetically arranged, showing cause and place of absence, accompanies each roll.

Digitized by Google

Being in column of companies at open ranks, each captain, as the mustering officer approaches, brings his company to right shoulder arms, and commands: *Attention to muster.*

The mustering officer or captain then calls the names on the roll; each man, as his name is called, answers *Here*, and brings his piece to order arms.

After muster, the mustering officer, accompanied by the company commanders and such other officers as he may designate, verifies the presence of the men reported in hospital, on guard, etc.

496. A company may be mustered in the same manner on its own parade ground, the muster to follow the company inspection.

ESCORTS.

ESCORT OF THE COLOR.

497. The regiment being in line, the colonel details a company, other than the color company, to receive and escort the color to its place in line.

The escort is formed in column of platoons, the band in front, the color bearer between the platoons. The escort then marches, without music, to the colonel's office or quarters, and is formed in line facing the entrance, the band on the right, the color bearer in the line of file closers.

The color bearer, preceded by the first lieutenant and followed by a sergeant of the escort, then goes to receive the color.

When the color bearer comes out, followed by the lieutenant and sergeant, he halts before the entrance, facing the escort; the lieutenant places himself on the right, the sergeant on the left of the color bearer; the escort presents arms, and the field music sounds *to the color.*

Arms are brought to the order; the lieutenant and sergeant return to their posts; the company is formed in column of platoons, the band taking post in front of the column; the color bearer places himself between the platoons; the escort marches in quick time, with guide left, back to the regiment, the band playing; the march is so conducted that when the escort arrives at fifty paces in front of the right of the regiment, the direction of the march shall be parallel to its front; when the color arrives opposite its place in line, the escort is formed in line to the left; the color bearer, passing between the platoons, advances and halts twelve paces in front of the colonel.

The color bearer having halted, the colonel, who has taken

Digitized by Google

post thirty paces in front of the center of his regiment, faces about, commands: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS,*** resumes his front and salutes; the field music sounds *to the color*, and the color bearer executes the color salute at the command *present arms*.

The colonel then faces about, brings the regiment to the order, at which the color bearer resumes the carry and takes his post with the color company.

The escort presents arms and comes to the order with the regiment, at the command of the colonel, after which the captain forms it again in column of platoons, and, preceded by the band, marches it to its place in line, passing around the left flank of the regiment.

The band plays until the escort passes the left of the line, when it ceases playing and returns to its post on the right, passing in rear of the regiment.

The regiment may be brought to a rest when the escort passes the left of the line.

Escort of the color is executed by a battalion according to the same principles.

ESCORTS OF HONOR.

498. Escorts of honor are detailed for the purpose of receiving and escorting personages of high rank, civil or military The troops for this purpose are selected for their soldierly appearance and superior discipline.

The escort forms in line, opposite the place where the personage presents himself, the band on the flank of the escort toward which it will march. On the appearance of the personage, he is received with the honors due to his rank. The escort is formed into column of companies, platoons, or squads, and takes up the march, the personage and his staff or retinue taking position in rear of the column; when he leaves the escort, line is formed and the same honors are paid as before.

When the position of the escort is at a considerable distance from the point where the personage is to be received, as for instance, where a court yard or wharf intervenes, a double line of sentinels is posted from that point to the escort, facing inward; the sentinels successively salute as he passes, and are then relieved and join the escort.

An officer is appointed to attend him and bear such communications as he may have to make to the commander of the escort.

Digitized by Google

FUNERAL ESCORT.

499. The composition and strength of the escort are prescribed in Army Regulations.

The escort is formed opposite the quarters of the deceased; the band on that flank of the escort toward which it is to march.

Upon the appearance of the coffin the commander commands: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS***, and the band plays an appropriate air; arms are then brought to the order.

The escort is next formed into column of companies, platoons, or squads. If the escort be small, it may be marched in line. The procession is formed in the following order: 1. *Music*, 2. *Escort*, 3. *Clergy*, 4. *Coffin and pallbearers*, 5. *Mourners*, 6. *Members of the former command of the deceased*, 7. *Other officers and enlisted men*, 8. *Distinguished persons*, 9. *Delegations*, 10. *Societies*, 11. *Civilians*. Officers and enlisted men (Nos. 6 and 7) with side arms are in the order of rank, seniors in front.

The procession being formed, the commander of the escort puts it in march.

The escort marches slowly to solemn music; the column having arrived opposite the grave, line is formed facing it.

The coffin is then carried along the front of the escort to the grave, arms are presented, the music plays an appropriate air; the coffin having been placed over the grave, the music ceases and arms are brought to the order.

The commander next commands: 1. *Parade*, 2. ***REST***. The escort executes *parade rest*, officers and men inclining the head.

When the funeral services are completed and the coffin lowered into the grave the commander causes the escort to resume attention and fire three rounds of blank cartridges, the muzzles of the pieces being elevated.

A musician then sounds *taps*.

The escort is then formed into column, marched in quick time to the point where it was assembled, and dismissed.

The band does not play until it has left the enclosure.

500. When the distance to the place of interment is considerable, the escort after having left the camp or garrison, may march *at ease* in quick time until it approaches the burial ground, when it is brought to attention. The music does not play while marching *at ease*.

In marching at attention, the field music may alternate with the band in playing.

Digitized by Google

501. In all funeral ceremonies, six pallbearers may be selected from the grade of the deceased, or the grades next above or below. If the deceased is a commissioned officer, the coffin is borne by six noncommissioned officers; if a noncommissioned officer or private, by six privates.

502. At the funeral of a general officer, the commander of the escort, in forming column, gives the appropriate commands for the different arms. The field music sounds the march, flourishes, or ruffles, according to the rank of the deceased, whenever arms are presented, after which the band plays an appropriate air.

503. At the funeral of a mounted officer or enlisted man, his horse, in mourning caparison, follows the hearse.

504. Should the entrance to the cemetery prevent the hearse accompanying the escort till the latter halts at the grave, the column is halted at the entrance long enough to take the coffin from the hearse, when the column is again put in march. The cavalry and artillery, when unable to enter the inclosure, turn out of the column, face the column, and salute the remains as they pass.

505. When necessary to escort the remains from the quarters of the deceased to the church before the funeral service, arms are presented upon receiving the remains at the quarters, and also as they are borne into the church.

506. The commander of the escort, previous to the funeral, gives the clergyman and pallbearers all needful directions.

GUARD MOUNTING.

507. At the *assembly*, the men warned for duty fall in on their company parade grounds, facing to the front; noncommissioned officers and supernumeraries fall in as file closers; each first sergeant then verifies his detail, inspects the dress and general appearance, and replaces by a supernumerary any man unfit to march on guard.

The band takes post on the parade, so that the left of its front rank shall be twelve paces to the right of the front rank of the guard when the latter is formed.

508. At *Adjutant's call*, the adjutant, dismounted, and the sergeant major on his left, march to the parade ground. The adjutant halts and takes post so as to be twelve paces in front of and facing the center of the guard when formed; the sergeant major continues on, moves by the left flank and takes facing to the left, twelve paces to the left of the front rank

Digitized by Google

of the band; the band plays in quick or double time; the details are marched to the parade ground by the first sergeants; the detail that arrives first is so marched to the line that, upon halting, the breast of the right front rank man shall be near to and opposite the left arm of the sergeant major; the first sergeant halts his detail, places himself in front of and facing the sergeant major, at a distance equal to or a little greater than the front of his detail, and commands: 1. *Right,* 2 ***DRESS.*** The detail dresses up to the line of the sergeant major and first sergeant, the right front rank man placing his breast against the left arm of the sergeant major; the noncommissioned officers take post two paces, and the supernumerary nine paces, in rear of the rear rank of the detail. The detail aligned, the first sergeant commands: ***FRONT,*** salutes, and then reports: *The detail is correct;* or, (*so many*) *sergeants, corporals,* or *privates are absent;* the sergeant major returns the salute with the right hand after the report is made; the first sergeant then passes by the right of the guard and takes post three paces in rear of his supernumerary.

Each of the other details is formed in like manner on the left of the one preceding; the privates, noncommissioned officers, supernumerary, and the first sergeant of each detail dress on those of the preceding details in the same rank or line; each first sergeant closes the rear rank to the right and fills blank files, as far as practicable, with men from his front rank.

The company details alternate in taking the right of the line.

509. When the last detail has formed, the sergeant major takes a side step to the right, draws sword, verifies the detail, takes post two paces to the right and two paces to the front of the guard, facing to the left, causes the guard to count off, completes the left squad, if necessary, as in the School of the Company, and if there be more than three squads, divides the guard into two platoons, again takes post as described above and commands: 1. *Open ranks,* 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command *march,* the rear rank steps back and halts three paces in rear of the front rank; the noncommissioned officers three paces in rear of the rear rank; all dress to the right. The sergeant major verifies the alignment of the ranks, file closers, supernumeraries and first sergeants, and again takes post as described above, commands ***FRONT,*** moves parallel to the front rank until opposite the center, turns to the right, halts midway to the adjutant, salutes and reports: *Sir, the details are correct;* or, *Sir* (*so many*) *sergeants, corporals,* or *privates are absent;* the adjutant returns the salute, directs the ser[illegible]

major: *Take your post*, and then draws saber; the sergeant major faces about, approaches to within two paces of the center of the front rank, turns to the right, moves three paces beyond the left of the front rank, turns to the left, halts on the line of the front rank, faces about and brings his sword to the order. When the sergeant major has reported, the officer of the guard takes post, facing to the front, three paces in front of the center of the guard, and draws saber.

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Officer* (or *Officers*) *and noncommissioned officers*, 2. *Front and center*, 3. ***MARCH.***

At the command *center*, the officer carries saber. At the command *march*, the officer advances and halts three paces from the adjutant, remaining at the carry; the noncommissioned officers pass by the flanks, along the front, and form in order of rank from right to left, three paces in rear of the officer, remaining at the right shoulder; if there is no officer of the guard the noncommissioned officers halt on a line three paces from the adjutant; the adjutant then assigns the officer and noncommissioned officers according to rank, as follows: *Commander of the guard, chief of first platoon, chief of second platoon, right guide of first platoon, left guide of second platoon, left guide of first platoon, right guide of second platoon*, and *file closers*.

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Noncommissioned officers;* or 1. *Officer and noncommissioned officers*, 2. ***POSTS***, 3. ***MARCH.***

At the command *posts*, all except the officer commanding the guard, face about. At the command *march*, they take the posts prescribed in the School of the Company with open ranks. The adjutant then directs: *Inspect your guard, sir;* at which the officer commanding the guard faces about, commands: 1. *Inspection*, 2. ***ARMS***, returns saber and inspects the guard.

During the inspection, the band plays; the adjutant returns saber, observes the general condition of the guard, and replaces by a supernumerary any man who is unfit for guard duty or does not present a creditable appearance. He also, when so directed, selects an orderly for the commanding officer, and notifies the commander of the guard of his selection.

510. If there be a junior officer of the guard, he takes post at the same time as the senior, facing to the front, three paces in front of the center of the first platoon; in going to the front and center he follows and takes position on the left of the senior and is assigned as chief of the first platoon; he may be directed by the commander of the guard to assist in inspecting the guard.

If there be no officer of the guard, the adjutant inspects the guard. A noncommissioned officer commanding the guard takes

post on the right of the right guide, when the guard is in line; and takes the post of the officer of the guard, when in column or passing in review.

511. The inspection ended, the adjutant places himself about thirty paces in front of and facing the center of the guard, and draws saber; the new officer of the day takes post in front of and facing the guard, about thirty paces from the adjutant; the old officer of the day takes post three paces to the right of and one pace to the rear of the new officer of the day; the officer of the guard takes post three paces in front of its center, draws saber with the adjutant and comes to the order; thereafter he takes the same relative positions as a captain of a company.

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Parade*, 2. ***REST***, 3. ***SOUND OFF***, and comes to the order and parade rest.

The band, playing, passes in front of the officer of the guard to the left of the line, and back to its post on the right, when it ceases playing.

The adjutant then comes to attention, carries saber and commands: 1. *Guard*, 2. ***ATTENTION***, 3. *Close ranks*, 4. ***MARCH.***

The ranks are closed as in the School of the Company.

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS***, faces towards the new officer of the day, salutes, and then reports: *Sir, the guard is formed.* The new officer of the day, after the adjutant has reported, returns the salute with the hand and directs the adjutant: *March the guard in review sir.*

The adjutant carries saber, faces about, brings the guard to an order, and commands: 1. *At trail, platoons right*, 2. ***MARCH***, 3. *Guard*, 4. ***HALT.***

The platoons execute the movement; the band turns to the right and places itself twelve paces in front of the first platoon.

The adjutant places himself six paces from the left flank and abreast of the commander of the guard; the sergeant major, six paces from the left flank of the second platoon.

The adjutant then commands: 1. *Pass in review*, 2. *Forward*, 3. *Guide right*, 4. ***MARCH.***

The guard marches in quick time past the officer of the day, according to the principles of review, and is brought to *eyes right* at the proper time by the commander of the guard; the adjutant, commander of the guard, chiefs of platoons, sergeant major, and drum major salute.

The band, having passed the officer of the day, turns to the left out of the column, places itself opposite and facing him, and continues to play until the guard leaves the parade ground.

Digitized by Google

field music detaches itself from the band when the latter turns out of the column, and, remaining in front of the guard, commences to play when the band ceases. In the absence of the band, the field music does not turn out of the column but continues in front of the guard.

Having passed twelve paces beyond the officer of the day, the adjutant halts; the sergeant major halts abreast of the adjutant and one pace to his left; they then return saber, salute, and retire; the commander of the guard then commands: 1. *Squads right*, 2. ***MARCH.*** 3. *Full step, platoons column left*, 4. ***MARCH,*** and marches the guard to its post.

The officers of the day face toward each other and salute; the old officer of the day turns over the orders to the new officer of the day.

While the band is sounding off, and while the guard is marching in review, the officers of the day stand at parade rest with arms folded, elbows nearly the height of the shoulder. They take this position when the adjutant comes to parade rest, resume the attention with him, again take the parade rest at the first note of the march in review, and resume attention as the head of the column approaches.

The new officer of the day returns the salute of the commander of the guard and the adjutant, making one salute with the hand.

512. The first sergeants and supernumeraries come to parade rest and attention with the guard; they remain at order arms while the guard is being presented and formed into column. The senior first sergeant commands: 1. *Parade*, 2. ***REST,*** at the command *march* for passing in review, and: 1. *Supernumeraries*, 2. ***ATTENTION,*** when the officers of the day come to attention; the first sergeants come to parade rest, and to attention with the supernumeraries. The rear of the column having passed the officer of the day, each first sergeant marches his supernumerary to the company parade and dismisses him.

513. If the guard be not divided into platoons, the adjutant commands: 1. *At trail, guard right*, 2. ***MARCH.*** 3. *Guard*, 4. ***HALT,*** and it passes in review as above; the commander of the guard is three paces in front of its center; the adjutant places himself six paces from the left flank and abreast of the commander of the guard; the sergeant major covers the adjutant on a line with the front rank.

514. As the new guard approaches the guard house, the old guard is formed in line, with its field music three paces to its

Digitized by Google

right; and when the field music at the head of the new guard arrives opposite its left, the commander of the new guard commands: 1. *Eyes*, 2. ***RIGHT;*** the commander of the old guard commands: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS;*** commanders of both guards salute. The new guard marches in quick time past the old guard.

When the commander of the new guard is opposite the field music of the old guard, he commands: ***FRONT;*** the commander of the old guard commands: 1. *Order*, 2. ***ARMS.***

The field music having marched three paces beyond the field music of the old guard, changes direction to the right, and, followed by the guard, changes direction to the left, when on a line with the old guard; the changes of direction are without command. The commander of the guard halts on the line of the front rank of the old guard, allows his guard to march past him, and, when its rear approaches, forms it in line to the left, establishes the left guide three paces to the right of the field music of the old guard, and on a line with the front rank, and then dresses his guard to the left; the field music of the new guard is three paces to the right of its front rank.

515. The new guard being dressed, the commander of each guard, in front of and facing its center, commands: 1. *Present*, 2. ***ARMS,*** resumes his front, salutes, carries saber, faces his guard and commands: 1. *Order*, 2. ***ARMS.***

Should a guard be commanded by a noncommissioned officer, he stands on the right or left of the front rank, according as he commands the old or new guard, and executes the rifle salute.

516. The detachments and sentinels of the old guard are relieved, and as they come in, form on its left; the commander of the old guard then marches it, with the guide right, six paces to the front, then in column of squads to the right; the field music begins to play and the guard marches in quick time past the new guard, both guards saluting.

517. Upon arriving on the parade ground, the commander of the old guard forms it in line, opens and closes chamber, orders successively the company details two paces to the front, and sends each, under charge of a noncommissioned officer or private, to its company.

518. In bad weather, at night, after long marches, or when the guard is very small, the music may be dispensed with, or the field music may take the place of the band and sound off, standing on the right of the guard, and the review be omitted.

The new officer of the day directs the adjutant: *guard to its post, Sir.* The adjutant brings the gu

Digitized by Google

order or right shoulder, commands: 1. *Guard to its post*, and adds the necessary commands for the guard to move off in column of squads or twos.

519. When dismounted cavalry and infantry are united for guard mounting, the cavalry details form as prescribed for infantry.

520. The duties herein prescribed for the first sergeant may be performed by other sergeants not detailed for guard.

521. Whenever practicable a single company, if of sufficient strength, furnishes the officers of the day and guard, the noncommissioned officers, musicians and privates of each guard.

If the entire strength of the company is not required for the guard, the remainder is held for such other duty, including fatigue, as may be required of it. The number of supernumeraries in such detail is fixed by the commanding officer.

Supernumerary and battalion staff officers are so detailed for duty with the company furnishing the guard, as to keep the tours of service distributed as uniformly as possible among all officers available for such duty.

Guard mounting, when there is but the one detail, is held as previously described; the detail is marched on as described for the first detail, the supernumeraries are distributed uniformly on the line nine paces in rear of the rear rank and the first sergeant places himself three paces in rear of the center of the line of supernumeraries.

522. For detailed instructions not herein prescribed, see Manual of Guard Duty.

Digitized by Google

MANUAL OF THE SABER.

523. Whenever the word *saber* appears it applies also to the *sword*, carried by noncommissioned staff officers.

524. 1. *Draw*, 2. ***SABER.***

Pl. 74, Par. 524

Pl. 75, Par. 524.

Pl. 76, Par. 524

At the command *draw*, unhook the saber with the thumb and first two fingers of the left hand, thumb on the end of the hook, fingers lifting the upper ring; grasp the scabbard with the left hand at the upper band, bring the hilt a little forward, seize the grip with the right hand, and draw the blade six inches out of the scabbard, pressing the scabbard against the thigh with the left hand.

At the command *saber*, draw the saber quickly, raising the arm to its full extent to the right front, at an angle of about forty-five degrees with the horizontal, the saber, edge down, in a straight line with the arm; make a slight pause and bring the back of the blade against the shoulder, edge to the front, arm nearly extended, hand by the side, elbow back, third and fourth fingers back of the grip; at the same time hook up the scabbard with the thumb and first two fingers of the left hand, thumb through the upper ring, fingers supporting it; drop the left hand by the side.

Pl. 77, Par. 526.

This is the position of carry saber dismounted.

Officers unhook the scabbard before mounting; when mounted, in the first motion of *draw saber*, they reach with the right hand over the bridle hand, and without the aid of the bridle hand draw the saber as before; the right hand at the *carry* rests on the right thigh.

On foot, officers carry the scabbard hooked up.

525. When publishing orders, the saber is held suspended from the right wrist by the saber knot; when the saber knot is used, it is placed on the wrist before drawing saber, and taken off after returning saber.

526. Being at the order or carry: 1. *Present*, 2. ***SABER***, (or ***ARMS***).

At the command *present*, raise and carry the saber to the front, base of the hilt as high as the chin and six inches in front of the neck, edge to the left, point six inches farther to the front than the hilt, thumb extended on the left of the grip, all the fingers grasping the grip.

At the command *saber*, or *arms*, lower the saber, point in prolongation of the right foot and near the ground, edge to the left, hand by the side, thumb on left of grip, arm extended. If mounted, the hand is held behind the thigh, point a little to the right and front of the stirrup

In rendering honors with troops, officers execute the first motion of the salute at the command *present*, the second motion at the command *arms;* enlisted men with the sword execute the first motion at the command *arms*, and omit the second motion.

Digitized by Google

527. Being at a carry: 1. *Order*, 2. ***SABER*** (or ***ARMS***).

Drop the point of the saber directly to the front, point on or near the ground, edge down, thumb on back of grip.

Pl. 78, Par. 527.

Pl. 79, Par. 529.

Pl. 80, Par. 530.

Being at the *present saber*, should the next command be *order arms*, officers *order saber;* if the command be other than *order arms*, they execute *carry saber*.

When arms are brought to the order, the officers or enlisted men with the saber or sword drawn *order saber*.

528. The saber is held at the carry while giving commands, marching at attention or changing position in quick time.

When at the order, sabers are brought to the carry when arms are brought to any position except the present or parade rest.

529. Being at the order: 1. *Parade*. 2. ***REST***.

Take the position of parade rest except that the left hand is uppermost and rests on the right hand, point of saber on or near the ground in front of the center of the body, edge to the right.

At the command *attention*, resume the order saber and the position of the soldier.

530. In marching in double time, the saber is carried

Digitized by Google

onally across the breast, edge to the front; the left hand steadies the scabbard.

Pl. 81, Par. 532.

531. Officers on all duties under arms draw and return saber without waiting for command. All commands to soldiers under arms are given with the saber drawn.

532. Being at a carry: 1. *Return*, 2. ***SABER.***

At the command *return*, carry the right hand opposite to and six inches from the left shoulder, saber vertical, edge to the left; at the same time unhook and lower the scabbard with the left hand, and grasp it at the upper band.

At the command *saber*, drop the point to the rear and pass the blade across and along the left arm; turn the head slightly to the left, fixing the eyes on the opening of the scabbard, raise the right hand, insert and return the blade; free the wrist from the saber knot (if inserted in it), turn the head to the front, drop the right hand by the side, hook up the scabbard with the left hand, drop the left hand by the side.

Officers, mounted, return saber without using the left hand; the scabbard is hooked up on dismounting.

533. At inspection, enlisted men with the sword drawn execute the first motion of *present saber*, and turn the wrist to show both sides of the blade, resuming the carry when the inspector has passed.

Digitized by Google

THE COLOR.

Manual of the Color.

534. At the *carry*, the heel of the pike rests in the socket of the sling at the right hip; the right hand grasps the pike at the height of the shoulder.

At the *order*, the heel of the pike rests on the ground near the right toe, the right hand holding the pike in a vertical position.

At *parade rest*, the heel of the pike is on the ground, as at the *order;* the pike is held with both hands in front of the center of the body, left hand uppermost.

The *order* is resumed at the command *attention.*

The left hand assists the right when necessary.

The *carry* is the habitual position when the troops are at a shoulder, port or trail.

The *order* and *parade rest* are executed with the troops.

The color salute.—Being at the carry, slip the right hand up the pike to the height of the eye, then lower the pike by straightening the arm to the front.

The color salutes in the ceremony *Escort of the Color*, and when saluting an officer entitled to the honor, but in no other case.

If marching, the salute is executed when at six paces from the officer entitled to the salute; the carry is resumed when six paces beyond him.

At a halt, the salute is executed at the command *present arms*, the color being brought to the *carry* at the command *present;* the salute executed, the *order* is resumed at the command *order arms*, the color being first brought to the *carry.*

Digitized by Google

THE BAND.

535. The band is formed in two or more ranks, with sufficient intervals between the men and distances between the ranks to permit a free use of the instruments.

The field music, when united, forms with and in rear of the band; when the band is not present, the posts, movements, and duties of the field music are the same as prescribed for the band; when a musician is in charge, his position is on the right of the front rank. When the battalion or regiment turns about by squads, the band executes the countermarch; when the battalion or regiment executes *right left* or *about face*, the band faces in the same manner.

In marching, the different ranks dress to the right.

In executing *open ranks*, each rank of the band takes the distance of three paces from the rank next in front; the drum major verifies the aligment.

The field music sounds the *march*, *flourishes* or *ruffles*, and *to the color*, at the signal of the drum major.

Instructions for the Drum Major.

536. The drum major is three paces in front of the center of the front rank, and gives the signals or commands for the movements of the band as for a squad, substituting in the commands *band* for *squad*.

Signals of the Drum Major.

537. Preparatory to a signal the staff is held in the right hand, hand below the chin, back to the front, head of the staff near the hand, ferrule pointing upward and to the right.

Prepare to play.—Face toward the band and extend the right arm to its full length in the direction of the staff. *Play.*—Bring the arm back to its original position in front of the body.

Prepare to cease playing.—Extend the right arm to its full length in the direction of the staff. *Cease playing.*—Bring the arm back to its original position in front of the body.

To march.—Turn the wrist and bring the staff to the front, the ferrule pointing upward and to the front; extend the arm to its full length in the direction of the staff.

Digitized by Google

To halt.—Lower the staff into the raised left hand and raise the staff horizontally above the head with both hands, the arms extended; lower the staff with both hands to a horizontal position at the height of the hips.

To countermarch.—Face toward the band and give the signal *to march.* The countermarch is executed by each front rank man to the right of the drum major turning to the right about, each to the left turning left about, each followed by the men covering him. The drum major passes through the center.

To oblique.—Bring the staff to a horizontal position, the head of the staff opposite the neck, the ferrule pointing in the direction the oblique is to be made; extend the arm to its full length in the direction of the staff.

To march by the right flank.—Extend the arm to the right, the staff vertical, ferrule upward, back of the hand to the rear.

To march by the left flank.—Extend the arm to the left, the staff vertical, ferrule upward, back of the hand to the front.

To diminish front.—Let the ferrule fall into the left hand at the height of the eyes, right hand at the height of the hip.

To increase front.—Let the ferrule fall into the left hand at the height of the hip, right hand at the height of the neck.

The *march, flourishes,* or *ruffles.*—Bring the staff to a vertical position, hand opposite the neck, back of the hand to the front, ferrule pointing down.

To the color.—Bring the staff to a horizontal position at the height of the neck, back of the hand to the rear, ferrule pointing to the left.

When the band is playing in marching, the drum major beats the time with his staff and supports the left hand at the hip. fingers in front, thumb to the rear.

The drum major, before making his report at parade, salutes by bringing his staff to a vertical position, head of the staff up and opposite the left shoulder.

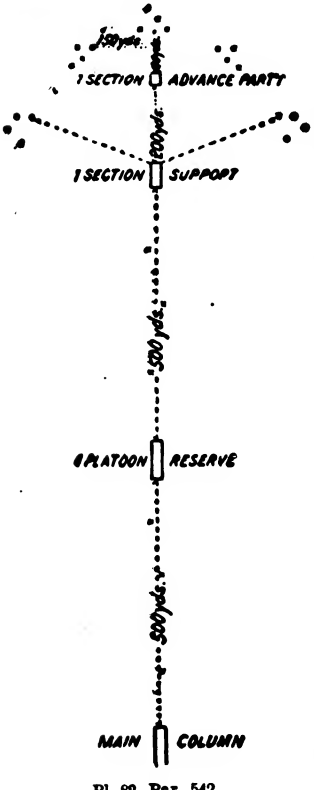
The drum major, marching in review, passes the staff between the right arm and the body, head of the staff to the front, and then salutes with the left hand.

At a halt and the band not playing the drum major holds his staff with the ferrule touching the ground about one inch from toe of right foot, at an angle of about sixty degrees, ball pointing upward to the right, right hand grasping staff near the ball, back of the hand to the front, left hand at the hip, fingers in front, thumb to the rear.

Digitized by Google

ADVANCE AND REAR GUARD.

538. An *advance guard* is a body of troops thrown out in front of a marching column to cover its movements, to prevent surprise, and gain information.



Pl. 82, Par. 542.

539. In an advance, it seizes advantageous positions and holds them until the main body comes up; or holds in check the advancing enemy until the main body can deploy and take up a position to meet him.

540. In retreat, it prepares the way for the main body, guarding and repairing roads, bridges, etc.; sweeping away any partisans or guerrillas. If hostile troops have outmarched the column and are in front of it, the advance guard performs duties of the same nature as in the advance.

541. The advance guard is divided into two nearly equal parts, the *vanguard* and the *reserve*.

The vanguard is subdivided into the *advance party* and the *support*. The advance party furnishes the *leading* and *flanking groups*. The support furnishes its own *flankers*.

542. A small advance guard, consisting of a company of infantry of one hundred men, may be disposed as follows:

A *point*, or leading group, consisting of three men under a corporal; a *flanking group* of four men on either flank, one hundred and fifty yards distant and some-

Digitized by Google

what retired; the remainder of the *advance party*, twelve men, under a sergeant, at one hundred yards in rear of the point.

The *support* follows at two hundred yards in rear of the advance party, throwing out, if necessary, two *flanking groups* of four men each, slightly in advance of the support, and somewhat farther out than the flankers of the advance party. The support, including the flankers, numbers twenty-five men. The commander of the vanguard is ordinarily with the support.

The *reserve*, one-half of the advance guard, follows at five hundred yards in rear of the support; the reserve may throw out flanking detachments at from two hundred to four hundred yards, on either or both flanks, and somewhat in advance and in rear of its position.

The commander of the advance guard is ordinarily with the reserve.

The main column follows at five hundred yards in rear of the reserve, or thirteen hundred yards from the point.

When necessary, the support sends out one or two men to preserve communication with the advance party; the reserve may send out men to preserve communication with the vanguard and with the main body.

543. *Rear guards* are corresponding bodies in rear of the column. In a forward movement, they protect the rear of the column from raiding parties or detachments, arrest stragglers, prevent pillaging, etc.

544. In a retreat, they cover the column, checking the enemy, and delaying him so as to insure the safety of the column.

545. The example given of the order of march of a small advance guard serves equally well as a type for a rear guard of the same strength, if it be considered as faced to the rear throughout.

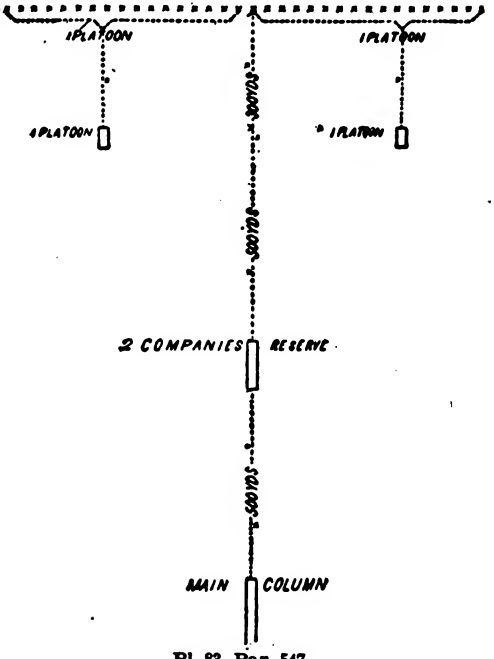
546. The strength of the advance guard in a forward movement varies from one-eighth to one-fourth of the whole force; in a very small force, one-eighth; in a very large force, one-fourth; and, generally, one-sixth. The rear guard is generally one-half the strength of the advance guard.

In retreat, the proportions given above for the advance guard would apply to the rear guard, and the advance guard would be half the strength of the rear guard.

It should be borne in mind, however, that these proportions vary according to circumstances, and must depend upon the judgment of the commander.

547. The foregoing rules must be modified to suit the varying condition of the country and of the advance and retreat

When the nature of the country is such that the flankers can not be used, they are dispensed with, but a point always precedes the remainder of the advance party.



Pl. 83, Par. 547.

In open country the advance party may be deployed in line of kirmishers at increased intervals; the support marching in olumn, or in line of squads with increased intervals.

Digitized by Google

OUTPOSTS.

548. The size of the detachment for outpost duty depends upon the strength of the main command, the proximity of the enemy, the extent of front to be covered, the character of the country, etc.; it should not, as a rule, exceed one-sixth of the whole force.

549. The object is to guard all approaches, to obtain the earliest information of the enemy's movements, and to obstruct and delay his advance.

550. The outposts should cover the entire front, extend well beyond the flanks and toward the rear.

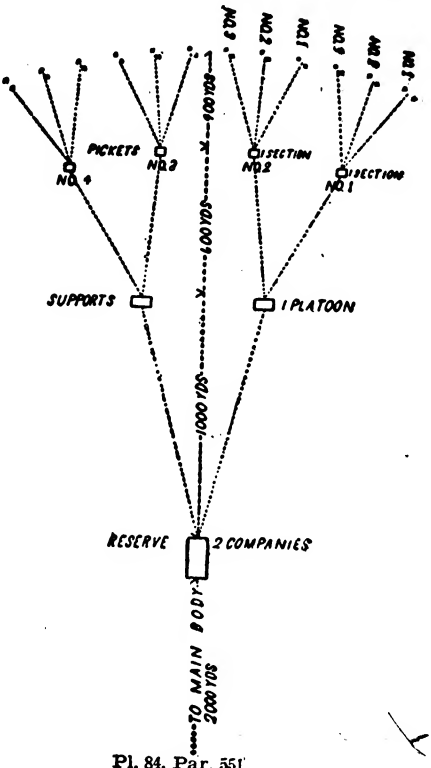
551. Outposts may be disposed as follows:

First: A line of sentinels; numbered from right to left in each picket.

Second: A line of small groups, called pickets; numbered from right to left in each outpost.

Third: A line of larger groups, called supports.

Fourth: The reserve.



Pl. 84, Par. 551.

Digitized by Google

The reserve is sometimes omitted when the supports hold a strong defensive line.

Posts in the line of sentinels are from one hundred to three hundred yards apart, and one or two men are placed on each post.

The sentinels keep themselves concealed; they watch the ground in their front and between them and the posts on their right and left; at least one man on each post must always be on the alert.

The picket is posted about four hundred yards in rear of the center of the line of sentinels for which it furnishes reliefs. The pickets, when necessary, send out patrols.

The support is posted about six hundred yards in rear of the center of the line of pickets.

The reserve is about one thousand yards in rear of the line of supports, and about two thousand yards in front of the main body.

The distances given above are modified according to circumstances by the commander of the outposts.

Plate No. 84 shows an outpost composed of an infantry battalion of four hundred men, covering a front of one mile.

552. Preferably, the line of sentinels and the line of pickets are replaced by a single line of posts of four men each, known as *Cossack posts*. The posts should be from one hundred to three hundred yards apart, and one man at each post should be continually on the alert. At important points the posts may consist of an entire squad.

The line of small posts should be from three hundred to four hundred yards in advance of the supports.

Digitized by Google

MARCHES.

553. The average march for infantry is from fifteen to twenty miles per day, at a rate of two and one-half to three miles per hour.

554. When troops move in large bodies, and particularly in the vicinity of the enemy, the march should be conducted in several columns, in order to diminish the depth of the columns and to expedite the deployment into line of battle.

555. The orders for the march should state the time for each division to commence its movement, and the points where the division or its elements should enter the main route, so as not to interfere with the march of the division preceding or following, and to prevent fatigue that would be caused by keeping men under arms longer than necessary.

556. In route marches, regiments usually alternate in leading the brigade; in like manner, brigades alternate in divisions, and divisions in corps.

557. In large commands, the roads, if possible, are left to the artillery and trains. The orders for the march should state whether the troops or trains are to have the right of way.

558. Each brigade is provided with a corps of pioneers under charge of a commissioned officer. The pioneers precede the column for the purpose of removing obstacles and preparing the way for the troops.

Whenever fences, hedges, walls, ditches, or small streams are encountered, a passageway is made wide enough for the column to march without obstruction. This will prevent the column from lengthening out, and also prevent the fatigue and delay of regaining distances.

Pioneers, mounted or in wagons when practicable, should repair the roads for trains.

559. Marches should ordinarily begin in the morning after the men have had their breakfasts.

After marching half or three quarters of an hour, the troops are halted for fifteen minutes to allow the men to relieve themselves and to adjust their clothing and accouterments.

Google

After the first rest, there should be a halt of ten minutes during every hour.

In tropical countries it is often necessary to increase the length and frequency of the halts.

On long marches, halts of half or three-quarters of an hour should be made for meals. The halt, if practicable, should be made in the vicinity of wood and water.

When long distances have to be overcome rapidly, it is done by changing gaits; the most favorable ground is selected for the double time; special care should be taken not to exhaust the troops immediately before engaging the enemy.

560. No man should be permitted to leave the ranks without permission of the captain; if he needs medical attention, the captain gives him a pass to the surgeon, showing his name, company, and regiment; if he is unable to return to his company, the surgeon admits him to the ambulance, or indorses the pass, stating that he is permitted to fall out on account of sickness.

The provost guard of the brigade marches in rear of the brigade.

It is the duty of all officers and noncommissioned officers to suppress straggling. Men who fall out of ranks are examined by the provost guard, and if absent without authority, they are arrested and sent to their regiments.

561. Whenever delays occur in front, the brigade may stack arms. It is the duty of all commanders, within their commands, to investigate, personally or by means of staff officers, every cause of delay, and staff officers should frequently be sent ahead for the purpose of gaining information that may shorten the march and lessen the fatigue of the troops.

Digitized by Google

CAMPING.

562. In the presence of the enemy, the troops bivouac in position; company officers bivouac in rear of their companies; the field and staff in rear of the center of the line of company officers.

563. When not in the presence of the enemy, each battalion usually camps in column of companies at convenient distances.

The tents of each company are arranged in two lines, facing each other, or in one line, all facing in the same direction; the tents of the company officers are arranged in line parallel to the flank of the column and at a convenient distance, facing the company street, captain's tent on the right, his lieutenants' on his left. The first sergeant's tent is on the flank of the company toward the officers' tents.

The tents of the major and his staff are in the line of those of the company officers; the major's opposite the center of his battalion; his adjutant's, on his right; those of the other staff officers, on his left.

The tent of the colonel is opposite the center of the regiment in rear of those of the company officers; the tent of the lieutenant colonel, on the right and that of the adjutant, on the left of the colonel's tent; those of the other staff officers, on the left of the adjutant's tent.

The tents of the noncommissioned staff and band are at the head of the column.

The kitchens of the men are in line on the flank nearest the company officers; the sinks for the men are on the flank opposite the company officers.

The kitchens of the officers are in rear of their tents; the sinks for the officers are in rear of the line of tents of the colonel and his staff.

The positions of the color line, guard tent, hospital, officers' horses, baggage wagons, etc., are prescribed by the commanding officer.

The width of the company streets and of the streets in front of the officers varies with the nature of the ground and strength of the command.

Digitized by Google

Pl. 85, Par. 563.

Digitized by Google

When time will permit, all the streets are ditched; a shallow ditch is also made around each tent.

When straw, leaves or boughs are at hand, the men should be required to raise their beds above the ground; attention to this rule, to cleanliness, and to the proper cooking of food will greatly reduce the number and frequency of camp diseases.

In winter quarters, tents may be pitched on frames made of boards or split logs, the bunks of the men being arranged one above another.

Selection of Site.

564. Old camp grounds should be avoided whenever possible. Wood, water and grass should be available. A southern slope on sandy or deep gravelly soil is desirable; the bank of a running river is good if not marshy.

Marshes, made ground, alluvial soil and enclosed ravines should be avoided.

Sinks.

565. On arrival in camp sinks should at once be constructed. They should be near the companies, and so placed as to not pollute the water either directly, by soakage, or by overflow in case of heavy rains. Whenever necessary to fulfill these conditions, they may be varied from their regular positions; not being placed near the kitchens.

A small trench suffices for a single night. For more permanent camps the trench for each company should be two or three feet wide, from three to ten feet deep, and twelve to fifteen feet long, with vertical sides. Seats and back rests of poles or other material should be provided, and the entire sink screened by brush, canvas or other means. Such permanent sinks should be discarded when filled within two feet of the surface, and completely filled with earth. All sinks should be filled in with earth before marching.

In cold weather it is usually sufficient to cover the contents of the sink once each day with lime, ashes or ordinary earth, the material being as dry as possible. In warmer weather the contents must be covered more frequently. In very warm weather particularly when there is danger of typhoid fever and similar epidemics, a sentinel should be posted over each sink with strict orders to require each man after using the sink to cover his fæces with the lime, ashes or earth. Or a man may be kept constantly on duty to so use the lime, ashes or earth.

In case impervious soil holds such amount of liquid in the

Digitized by Google

sink as to render the preceding methods impracticable, each sink should be disinfected daily by scattering dried leaves, straw or other litter over the contents, sprinkling the litter liberally with crude or mineral oil and setting on fire.

The constant endeavor should be to prevent sinks contaminating the water supply and to prevent flies carrying contagion from the sinks to the food.

Kitchen Pits.

566. Pits should at once be constructed for the purely liquid refuse from the kitchens; solid refuse should be burned; at the kitchen fire in case of daily change of camp; at some designated place in case of more permanent camps, the refuse being taken thereto and burned daily by police parties.

Except in camps of the most temporary character kitchen pits should be covered with boards or other material, to exclude the flies. In case boards are not available small saplings may be cut in convenient lengths to reach across the pit. On top of these supports small brushwood is laid crosswise and then covered with straw, weeds or grass, which is then covered with earth. A small hopper placed in the cover, for pouring in the liquid refuse, may be covered by a board when not in use, thus making the exclusion of flies complete. By fastening a wire screen to the bottom of the hopper solid matter can be excluded from the pit. In porous soils this materially increases the length of time a single pit will dispose of the liquid refuse.

All pits should be filled in with earth before marching.

Water Supply.

567. On going into camp a guard should be placed over the water supply and places designated for obtaining the drinking and cooking water, watering animals, bathing, and washing clothing. The first should be farthest up the source of supply and the others in the order named. If the stream be small it is best to construct reservoirs by building small dams across the stream.

If the supply be from small springs each may be dug out, lined with a gabion or barrel with both heads removed, and the space between the lining and the earth filled with puddled clay. The same method may frequently be used near swamps, streams or lakes. In all cases the puddled clay should be carried up into a curb to keep out the surface drainage.

Water that is not known to be pure should be thoroughly boiled, then c[illegible] and aerated before drinking.

Digitized by Google

Impurities in suspension may be removed by an extemporized filter. A small hole in the bottom of a barrel, can or similar vessel, is stopped with a piece of sponge or other material allowing the free passage of water. A layer of clean, coarse sand, three or four inches thick, is then placed in the bottom, followed by a similar layer of pounded charcoal; then another of sand followed by one of gravel, both of which should be washed clean before being placed in the filter.

Kitchen Fires.

568. Camp kettles can be hung on a support consisting of a small green pole lying in the crotches of two upright posts of the same character.

A narrow trench for the fire, about one foot deep, dug under the pole, not only protects the fire from the wind but saves fuel. A still greater economy of fuel can be effected by digging a similar trench in the direction of the wind and slightly narrower than the diameter of the kettles. The kettles are then placed on the trench and the space between the kettles filled in with stones, clay, etc., leaving the flue running beneath the kettles. The draft can be improved by building a chimney of stones, clay, etc., at the leeward end of the flue.

Four such trenches radiating from a common central chimney will give one flue for use whatever may be the direction of the wind.

A slight slope of the flue, from the chimney down, provides for drainage and improves the draft.

Ovens.

569. The lack of portable ovens can be met by ovens constructed of stone and covered with earth to better retain the heat. If no stone is available an empty barrel with one head out is laid on its side, covered with wet clay to a depth of six or more inches and then with a layer of dry earth equally thick. A flue is constructed with the clay above the closed end of the barrel, which is then burned out with a hot fire. This leaves a baked clay covering for the oven.

A recess can be similarly constructed with boards or even brushwood, supported on a horizontal pole resting on upright posts, covered and burned out as in case of the barrel.

When clay banks are available an oven may be excavated therein and used at once.

To bake in such ovens, first heat and then close flues and end.

Digitized by Google

PITCHING TENTS.

Single Shelter Tents.

570. The captain causes the company to stack arms, dresses it back to four paces from the stacks and commands: *Form for shelter tents.*

The officers fall out, the first sergeant falls in as rear rank man of the right file composed of himself and right guide: blank files are filled by the file closers or by men taken from the front rank; the remaining file closers fall in on the left.

The captain then commands: 1. *To the left* (*right*) *take shelter tent intervals*, 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. *Company*, 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT,*** 6. ***PITCH TENTS.***

At the command *march*, all face to the left and move off in succession, the front and rear rank men alternating. Each rear rank man places himself in rear of his front rank man in a single column; as the line is being extended, each man grasps with his left hand the right wrist of the man in front.

If intervals are taken to the right, the front rank man of each file follows his rear rank man, and each man grasps with his right hand the left wrist of the man in front.

At the command *halt*, given as the second man from the right has his interval, all halt, face to the front, dress to the right and correct their intervals by moving to the left until the arms are fully extended.

At the command *front*, all drop their hands.

At the command *pitch tents*, each rear rank man moves back to four paces in rear of his front rank man; all unsling and open the blanket rolls and take out the shelter half, poles and pins; the front rank man places one pin in the ground at the point where his right heel, kept in position until this time, was planted. Each then spreads his shelter half, triangle to the rear, flat upon the ground the tent is to occupy, rear rank man's half on the right. The halves are then buttoned together. Each front rank man joins his pole, inserts the top in the eyes of the halves and holds the pole upright beside the pin placed in the ground; his rear rank man, using the pins in front, pins down the front corners of the tent on the line of pins, stretching the canvas taut: he then inserts a pin in the eye of the rope and drives the pin at such distance in front of the pole as to hold the rope taut. Both then go to the rear of the tent; the rear rank man adjusts the pole and the front rank man drives the

pins. The rest of the pins are then driven by both men, the rear rank man working on the right.

As soon as the tent is pitched, each man arranges the contents of the blanket roll in the tent, and stands at attention in front of his own half on line with the front guy rope pin.

The guy ropes, to have a uniform slope when the shelter tents are pitched, should all be of the same length.

571. Shelter tents are pitched by a squad or platoon in the same manner as by a company.

Double Shelter Tents.

572. The double shelter tent is formed by buttoning together the square ends of two single tents. Two complete tents, except one pole, are used. Two guy ropes are used at each end, the guy pins being placed in front of the corner pins.

The double shelter tents are pitched by numbers one and two front and rear rank, and by numbers three and four front and rear rank; the men falling in on the left are numbered, counting off if necessary.

The captain gives the same commands as before, inserting *double* before *shelter* in the first command, and before *tents* in the last command.

The commands are executed in the same manner as when pitching single shelter tents, with the following exceptions:

Only the front rank grasp wrists; the rear rank cover their file leaders at six paces distance.

The first sergeant places himself on the right of the right guide and with him pitches a single shelter tent.

Only the odd numbers of the front rank mark the line with the tent pin.

All the men spread their shelter halves on the ground the tent is to occupy. Those of the front rank are placed with the triangular ends to the front. All four halves are then buttoned together, first the ridges and then the square ends. The front corners of the tent are pinned by the front rank men, the odd number holding the poles, the even number driving the pins. The rear rank men similarly pin the rear corners.

While the odd numbers steady the poles, each even number of the front rank takes his pole and enters the tent where, assisted by the even number of the rear rank, he adjusts the pole to the center eyes of the shelter halves in the following order: 1st, the lower half of the front tent; 2nd, the lower half of the rear

tent; 3rd, the upper half of the front tent; 4th, the upper half of the rear tent. The guy ropes are then adjusted.

The tents having been pitched, the triangular ends are turned back, contents of the rolls arranged, and the men stand at *attention*, each opposite his own shelter half and facing out from the tent.

573. To pitch single or double shelter tents by battalion, the major causes the right (left) guides to cover, dresses the battalion on the covering guides and commands: 1. *Pitch (double) tents.* Each captain causes his company to pitch tents by the same commands and in the same manner as previously described.

To Strike Shelter Tents.

574. Arms having been stacked and everything removed from the tents: 1. *Strike tents*, 2. ***DOWN,*** 3. *To the right (left) assemble*, 4. ***MARCH.***

At the first command, the side pins are removed; the front rank man steadies the front pole, the rear rank man the rear pole, and all remaining pins are removed.

At the second command, or last note of *the general*, the tents are lowered, blanket rolls packed and slung, and the men stand at attention in front and rear of the places lately occupied by their tents at their original places after extension.

At the third command, they close in to the right and re-form company.

Common and Wall Tents.

575. Four men, numbered from 1 to 4 consecutively, pitch each tent.

Nos. 1 and 2 place the ridgepole perpendicular to the company street, with one end against the position pin; Nos. 3 and 4 drive a pin at the other end of the ridgepole. Nos. 1 and 2 mark the positions of the four corner guy-rope pins by placing the ridgepole parallel to the company street, to the right (facing the tent) of the position pin; Nos. 3 and 4 drive a large pin one pace in front of the outer end of the ridgepole. The other three corner guy pins are set in succession in the same manner, going first straight to the rear, then across the tent and then to the front. All four then spread the tent on the ground it is to occupy; Nos. 1 at the front and 2 at the rear insert the uprights. The ridgepole and uprights are joined, the pole pins inserted in the eyelets of the tent and the tent raised to a vertical

position with the poles at the pins. Nos. 1 and 2 hold the tent in position; No. 3 places the front guy ropes of tent and fly, No. 4, the rear, on their pins, and tighten the same so as to hold the poles vertical. The wall pins are then driven through the loops, walls hanging vertically. The other pins are then driven on line with the corner pins and in prolongation of the seams of the tent.

Conical Wall Tents.

576. The conical wall tent is pitched by a squad. The corporal numbers the privates from 1 to 7, and superintends the work.

Upon the hood lines of the tent are placed three marks; the first is about 8 feet 3 inches, the second about 11 feet 3 inches, the third about 14 feet 2 inches from the hood ring; the first marks the distance from the center to the wall pins, the second to the guy pins, and the distance between the second and third is the distance between guy pins. These distances vary slightly for different tents and should be verified by actual experiment before permanently marking the ropes. To locate the position of guy pins after the first, the hood ring being held on the center pin, with the left hand hold the outer mark on the pin last set, with the right hand grasp the rope at the center mark and move the hand to the right so as to have both sections of the rope taut; the center mark is then over the position desired; the inner mark is over the position of the corresponding wall pin.

To pitch the tent, No. 1 places the tent pole on the ground, socket end against the door pin, pole perpendicular to the company street. No. 2 drives the center pin at the other extremity of the pole. No. 3 drives a wall pin on each side of and one foot from the door pin. No. 4 places the open tripod flat on the ground with its center near the center pin. The whole squad then places the tent, fully opened, on the ground it is to occupy, the center at the center pin, the door at the door pin.

The noncommissioned officer holds the hood ring on the center pin, and superintends from that position. No. 1 stretches the hood rope over the right (facing the tent) wall pin and No. 2 drives the first guy pin at the middle mark. No. 1 marks the position of the guy pins in succession and No. 2 drives a pin lightly in each position as soon as marked. At the same time No. 5 inserts small pins in succession through the wall loops and places the pins in position against the inner mark on the hood.

where they are partly driven by No. 6. No. 4 distributes large pins ahead of Nos. 1 and 2; No. 7, small pins ahead of Nos. 5 and 6; No. 3 follows Nos. 1 and 2 and drives the guy pins home. No. 7, after distributing his pins, takes an axe and drives home the pins behind Nos. 5 and 6. No. 4, after distributing his pins, follows No. 3 and loops the guy ropes over the pins.

Nos. 1, 2 and 3, the pins being driven, slip under the tent and place the pin of the pole through the tent and hood rings while the noncommissioned officer places the hood in position. Nos. 1, 2 and 3 then raise the pole to a vertical position and insert the end in the socket of the tripod; they then raise the tripod to its proper height, keeping the center of the tripod over the center pin; while they hold the pole vertical Nos. 4, 5, 6 and 7 adjust four guy ropes, one in each quadrant of the tent, to hold the pole in its vertical position, and then the remaining guy ropes. As soon as these are adjusted the men inside drive a pin at each foot of the tripod if necessary to hold it in place.

To Strike Common, Wall and Conical Wall Tents.

577. 1. *Strike tents*, 2. ***DOWN.***

The men first remove all pins except those of the four corner guy ropes, four quadrant guy ropes in case of the conical wall tent. The pins are neatly piled or placed in their receptacle.

One man removes each guy from its pin and all hold the tent in a vertical position until the command *down* or the last note of *the general*, and then lower it to the indicated side.

The canvas is then folded, or rolled, and tied; the poles, or tripod and pole, fastened together, and the remaining pins collected.

To Fold Tents.

578. Wall tents: Spread the tent flat on its side and place all guys but two over on the canvas; fold the triangular ends over so as to make the canvas rectangular; fold both ends over so that they meet at the center and then fold one end over on the other; fold the bottom and ridge over so that they meet at the center of the strip, and then fold one end over on the other.

Fold the fly into four folds, parallel to its length, then in a similar manner across its length, making a rectangle with dimensions about the same as the folded tent.

Place the fly on the t[illegible]ross the two free guys and tie them so that they pass ov[illegible] and across the sides.

Tie the bundle with the two free guys as in case of the wall tent.

Conical Wall Tents: Spread the tent flat with the door up; holding the ring vertical, fold the two edges in so they meet at the center and again fold in the same manner; place the hood on one half and fold the other half over on it; turn wall over toward ring, fold coming at about middle of height of wall; two men working together then roll from the ring down, placing knees on each fold to make bundle compact and flat.

Tie the bundle with the two free guys as in case of the wall tent.

General Remarks.

579. As soon as the lines of company streets are established the positions of the tents should be marked from the flank nearest the officers' tents, by pins. The front pole of the wall and common tent, and the door pins of the conical wall tents, occupy the points so marked. The distance between pins may be determined by pacing or by a light cord with the distances marked upon it. These distances are: for wall tents, eight paces; common tents, six paces; conical wall tents, ten paces. The pins marking the position of the tents are, when practicable, set on a straight line, and the company officers verify and correct the alignment of such pins in the quickest and most convenient manner.

580. Wall pins are so driven as to slope slightly away from the tent; guy pins, so as to slope slightly toward the tent.

581. Each tent, its fly, hood, poles, and tripod, should have the same number.

582. The conical wall tent complete consists of one tent and hood, 76 pounds; one tent pole and tripod, 32 pounds; forty-eight pins, about 20 pounds; total weight, 128 pounds. Its dimensions are: Diameter, 16½ feet; height, 10 feet; height of wall, 3 feet; packed, contains 13 cubic feet.

583. The wall tent complete consists of one tent, 43 pounds; one fly, 15 pounds; one set poles, 25 pounds; 10 large and 18 small tent pins, about 15 pounds; total weight, 98 pounds. Its dimensions are: Length of ridge, 9 feet; width, 8 feet 11 inches; height, 8½ feet; height of wall, 3 feet 9 inches; packed, contains 6 cubic feet.

584. The common tent complete consists of one tent, 26 pounds; one set poles, 15 pounds; twenty-four small tents pins, about 9 pounds; total weight, 50 pounds. Its dimen- Length of ridge, 6 feet 11 inches; width, 8 feet 4 ght, 6 feet 10 inches; height of wall, 2 feet

585. The shelter tent equipment for each enlisted man consists of the following:

(a) One shelter half, weight 3 pounds.

(b) One pole in three joints, 47 inches long; weight, 10½ ounces.

(c) Five tent pins, 9 inches long, weight, 10 ounces.

The shelter tent is pitched by two men, whose combined equipments make a complete tent. The tent when pitched, occupies a space 5 feet 4 inches deep and 6 feet 4 inches wide; the two triangular parts, when pinned to the ground, enclose an additional triangular ground space 20 inches deep.

586. In striking tents, common and wall tents are, unless otherwise directed, lowered to the right facing out from the tent door; cónical wall tents, away from the door.

Digitized by Google

HONORS.

587. The national or regimental color or standard, uncased, passing an armed body is saluted, the field music sounding *to the color*. Officers or enlisted men passing the uncased color render the prescribed salute; with no arms in hand, the salute is made by uncovering; the headdress is held in the right hand opposite the left shoulder, right forearm against the breast.

588. Whenever The Star Spangled Banner is played by the band on a formal occasion at a military station, or at any place where persons belonging to the military service are present in their official capacity, all officers and enlisted men present stand at attention. The same respect is observed toward the national air of any other country when it is played as a compliment to official representatives of such country.

589. Troops under arms salute other armed bodies, the commanding officer, and his superiors; if halted in line, by presenting arms; if marching, eyes are turned in the direction of the person or body of troops saluted by the commands: 1. *Eyes*, 2. ***RIGHT*** (***LEFT***), 3. ***FRONT;*** the command *front* is given when the person or body is passed. The commander of the troops salutes.

When troops are in column at a halt, the commander alone salutes; the present or eyes right (left) is omitted.

Troops are brought to attention when a body or an officer entitled to a salute passes in rear.

Unarmed troops salute as prescribed for armed bodies, except that when halted the present is omitted.

The commander of a body of troops salutes, in person, his superior officers not mentioned above; other officers and men of the command do not salute; the present or eyes right (left) is omitted.

Troops are brought to attention, if not already there, before their commander salutes.

590. No honors are paid by troops when on the march or in trenches, except that they may be called to attention; no salute is rendered when marching in double time.

591. The commander of a body of troops is saluted by all officers junior in rank and by all enlisted men. The salute is returned by the commander only.

Digitized by Google

592. All officers salute on meeting and in making or receiving official reports. Military courtesy requires the junior to salute first, but when the salute is introductory to a report made at a military ceremony or formation to the representative of a common superior—as for example, to the adjutant, officer of the day, etc.—the officer making the report, whatever his rank, will salute first; when not otherwise prescribed in ceremonies, the officer to whom the report is made will acknowledge by saluting, that he has received and understood the report. When under arms the salute is made with the saber if drawn: otherwise with the hand. A mounted officer dismounts before addressing a superior not mounted.

On official occasions, officers, when indoors and under arms, do not uncover, but salute with the saber if drawn; otherwise with the hand. If not under arms, they uncover and stand at attention, but do not salute except when making or receiving reports.

593. Enlisted men carrying rifles, not in ranks, when within saluting distance salute an officer with the rifle salute, look toward him and retain the left hand in position until the salute is acknowledged or he is passed.

If unarmed the salute is made in a similar manner with the hand farthest from the officer; if mounted the salute is made with the right hand.

If approaching an officer the salute begins when six paces from him.

Indoors and armed with a rifle, the salute is made from the position of the order or trail.

Officers are saluted whether in uniform or not.

594. An enlisted man, if seated, rises on the approach of an officer, faces toward him and salutes. If standing, he faces the officer for the same purpose. If the parties remain in the same place or on the same ground, such compliments need not be repeated. Soldiers actually at work do not cease work to salute an officer unless addressed by him.

595. An enlisted man makes the prescribed salute with the weapon he is armed with, or if unarmed, whether covered or uncovered, with the hand, before addressing an officer. He also makes the same salute after receiving a reply.

596. All salutes in passing or approaching are begun first by the junior at six paces distance, or, at six paces from the nearest point of passing; no salutes, except as otherwise prescribed, are made at greater [illegible]nces than thirty paces.

Google

597. Indoors, an unarmed enlisted man uncovers and stands at attention upon the approach of an officer; he does not salute unless he addresses or is addressed by the officer. If armed he salutes as heretofore prescribed, without uncovering.

598. When an officer enters a room where there are soldiers, the word *attention* is given by some one who perceives him, when all rise and remain standing in the position of a soldier until the officer leaves the room. Soldiers at meals do not rise.

599. Officers at all times acknowledge the courtesies of junior officers and enlisted men by returning their salutes. When several officers in company are saluted, all who are entitled to the salute return it.

600. Officers arriving at the headquarters of a military command, or at a military post, call upon the commander thereof as soon as practicable and register their names. If the visiting officer be senior to the commander, the former may send a card, in which case it becomes the duty of the commander to make the first call.

601. Officers of the Navy are saluted according to their relative rank; officers of marines and of the volunteer forces or militia in the service of the United States, and officers of foreign services, are saluted according to rank.

602. Honors, courtesies, and ceremonies not referred to herein are found in Army Regulations and in the Manual of Guard Duty.

Digitized by Google

TRUMPET CALLS, ETC.

Warning Calls.

603. *First call, guard mounting, full dress, overcoats, drill, stable, water,* and *boots and saddles,* precede the *assembly* by such interval as may be prescribed by the commanding officer.

Mess, church, and *fatigue,* classed as service calls, may also be used as warning calls.

First call is the first signal for formation for roll call and for all ceremonies except guard mounting.

Guard mounting is the first signal for guard mounting.

The field music assembles at *first call* and *guard mounting.*

In a mixed command, *boots and saddles* is the signal to mounted troops that their formation is to be mounted; for mounted guard mounting or mounted drill, it immediately follows the signal *guard mounting* or *drill.*

When full dress or overcoats are to be worn, the *full dress* or *overcoat* call immediately follows *first call, guard mounting,* or *boots and saddles.*

Formation Calls.

604. *Assembly:* the signal for companies or details to fall in.

Adjutant's call: the signal for companies to form battalion; also for the guard details to form for guard mounting on the camp or garrison parade ground; it follows the *assembly* at such interval as may be prescribed by the commanding officer.

To the color: is sounded when the color salutes; it is also used as the signal for the battalions to form regiment.

Alarm Calls.

605. *Fire call:* the signal for the men to fall in, without arms, to extinguish fire.

To arms: the signal for the men to fall in, under arms, on their company parade grounds as quickly as possible.

To horse: the signal for mounted men to proceed under arms to their horses, saddle, mount and assemble at a designated place as quickly as possible. In extended order this signal is used to remount troo

Digitized by Google

Service Calls.

606. *Tattoo, taps, mess, sick, church, recall, issue, officers', captains', first sergeants' fatigue, school* and *the general.*

The general is the signal for striking tents and loading wagons preparatory to marching.

Reveille precedes the *assembly* for roll call; *retreat* follows the *assembly*, the interval between being only that required for formation and roll call, except when there is parade.

Taps is the signal for extinguishing lights; it is usually preceded by *call to quarters* by such interval as prescribed by Army Regulations.

Assembly, reveille, retreat, adjutant's call, to the color, the *flourishes, ruffles,* and the *marches* are sounded by all the field music united; the other calls, as a rule, are sounded by the musicians of the guard or orderly musician; he may also sound the *assembly* when the musicians are not united.

The morning gun is fired at the first note of reveille, or, if marches be played before *reveille,* it is fired at the commencement of the first march.

The evening gun is fired at the last note of *retreat.*

Drill Signals.

607. The drill signals include both the preparatory commands and the commands of execution; the last note is the command of execution.

When a command is given by the trumpet, the chiefs of subdivisions give the proper commands orally.

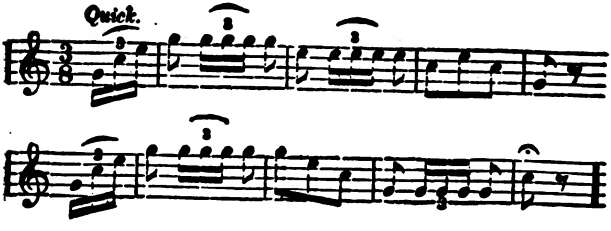
The memorizing of these signals is facilitated by observing that all signals for movements to the right are on the ascending scale, that the signals for the same movements to the left are corresponding signals on the descending scale; that changes of gait are all on the same note; that *captains' call* is the first two bars of *officers' call* with the *attention* added.

Digitized by Google

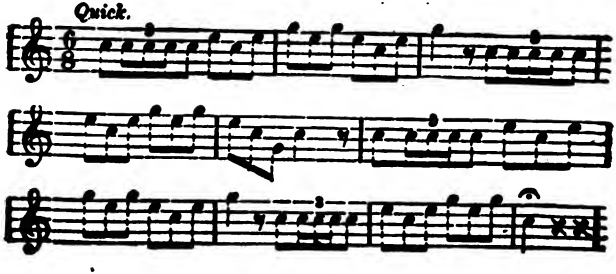
TRUMPET CALLS.

To economize space, the music is written an octave higher than the trumpet scale, and is adjusted to the scale of the bugle.

1. First Call.

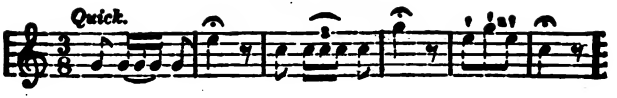


2. Guard Mounting



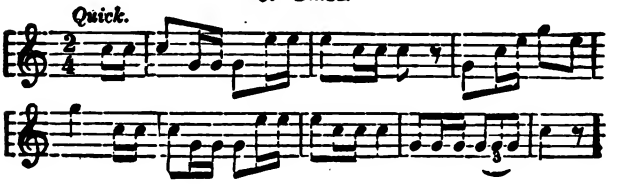
Digitized by Google

3. FULL DRESS.

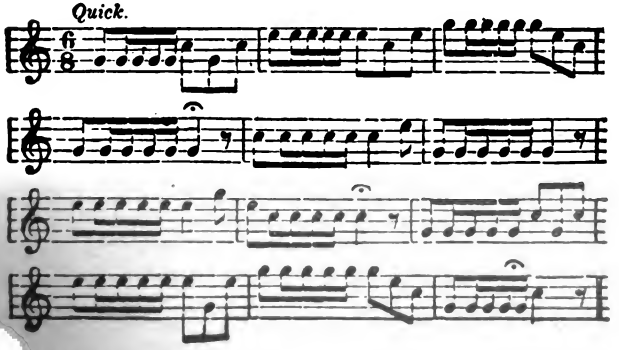


4. OVERCOATS.

5. DRILL.

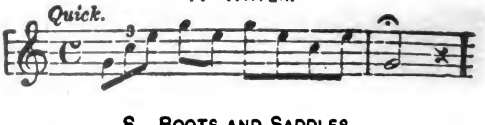


6. STABLE

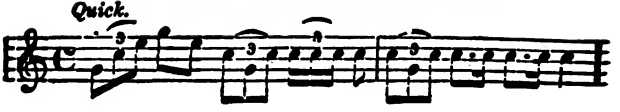


Digitized by Google

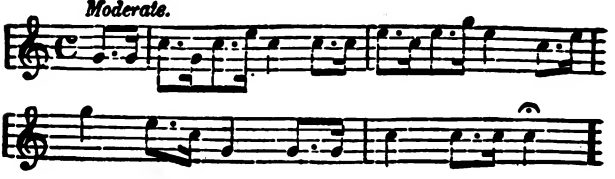
7. WATER.



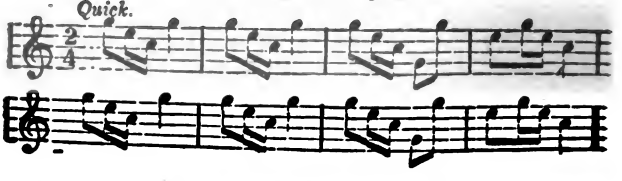
8. BOOTS AND SADDLES



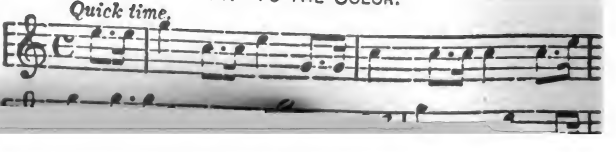
9. ASSEMBLY.



10. ADJUTANT'S CALL

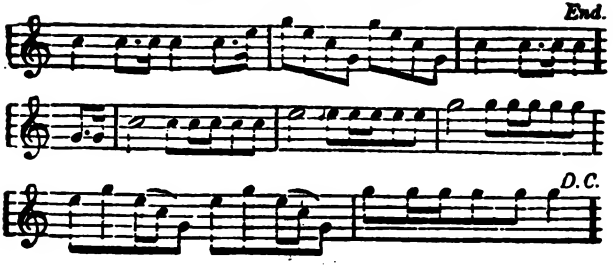


11. TO THE COLOR.

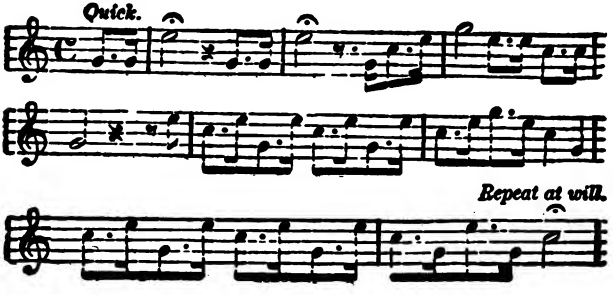


Digitized by Google

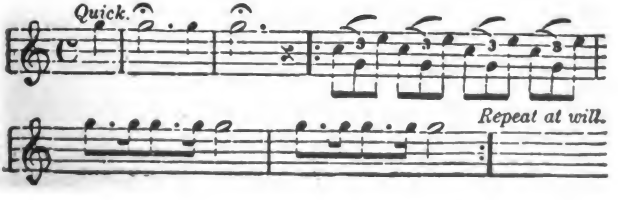
TO THE COLOR—*Concluded.*



12. FIRE.



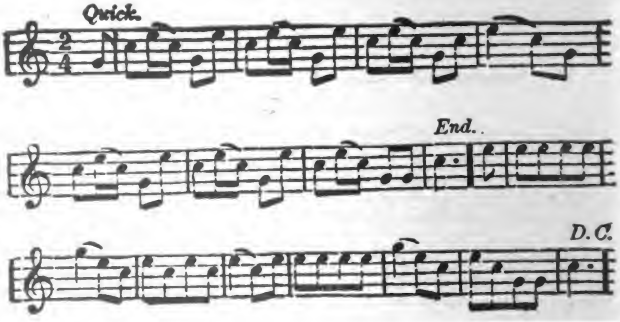
13. TO ARMS.



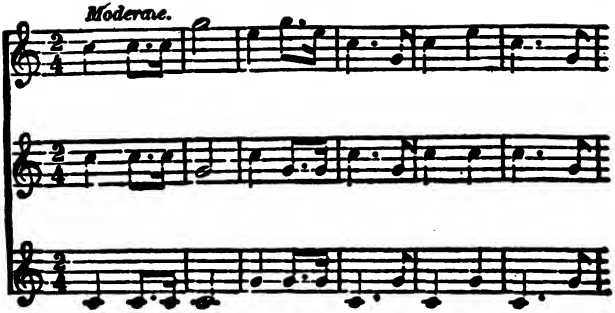
Digitized by Google

14. TO HORSE.

15. REVEILLE.

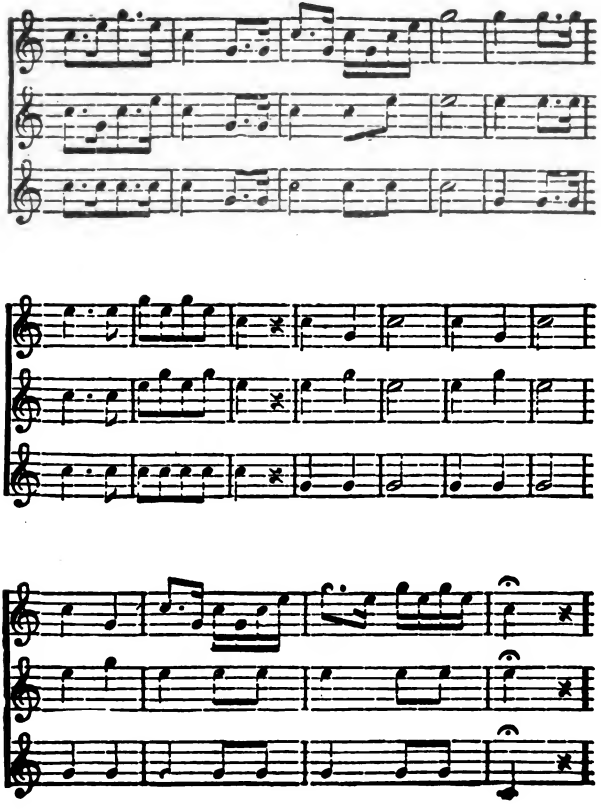


16. RETREAT.



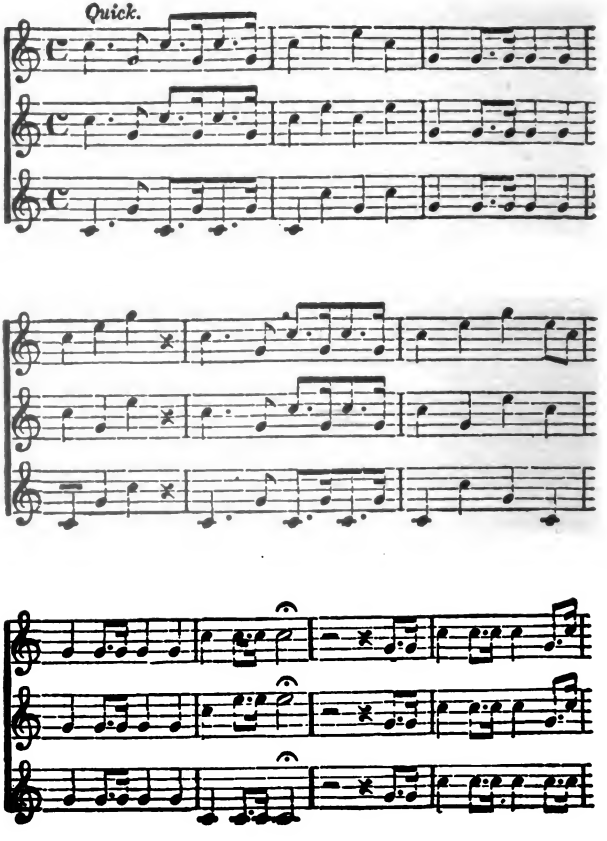
Digitized by Google

RETREAT—*Concluded.*



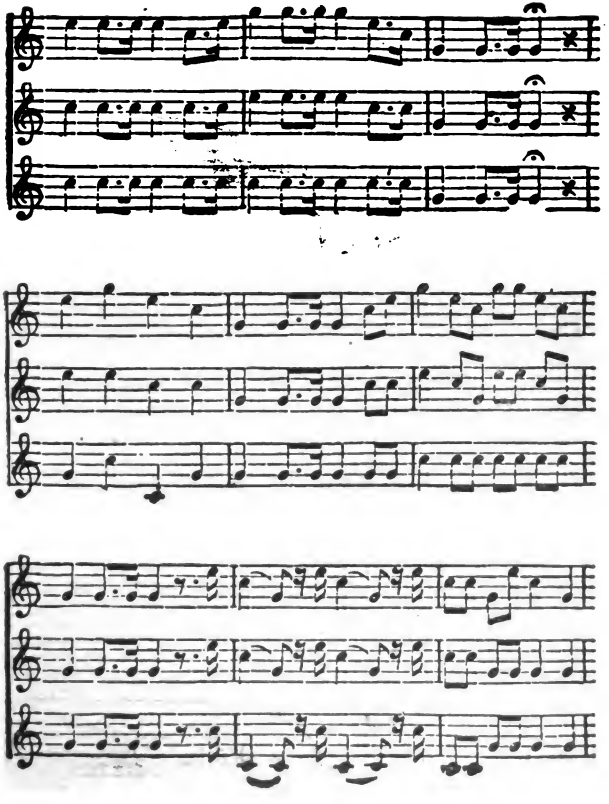
Digitized by Google

17. TATTOO.



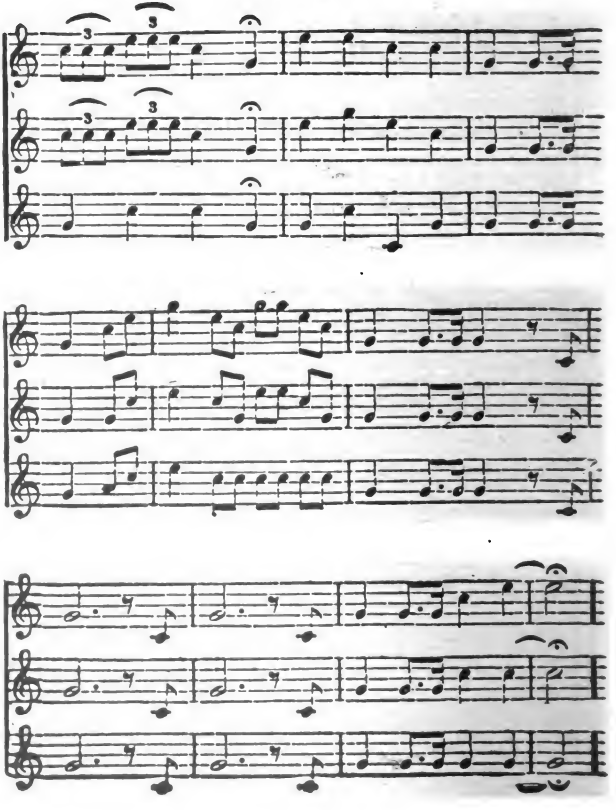
Digitized by Google

TATTOO—*Continued.*



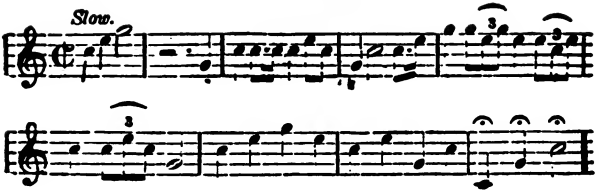
Digitized by Google

TATTOO—*Concludea.*

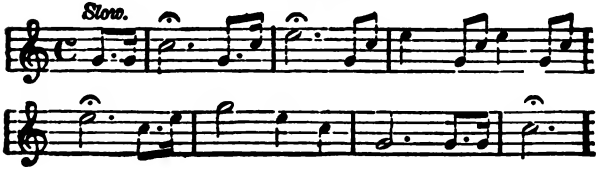


Digitized by Google

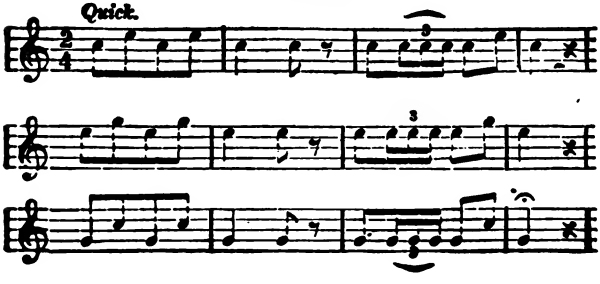
18. Call to Quarters.



19. Taps.

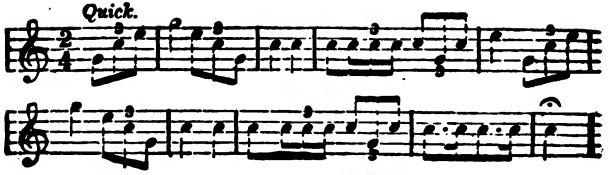


20. Mess.

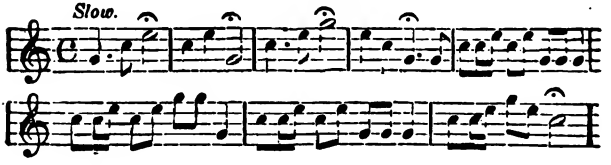


Digitized by Google

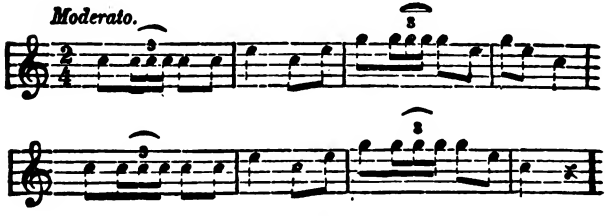
21. SICK.



22. CHURCH.



23. RECALL.

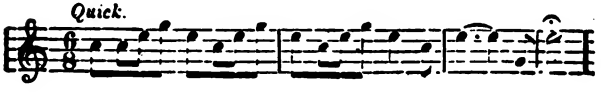


24. ISSUE.

Digitized by Google

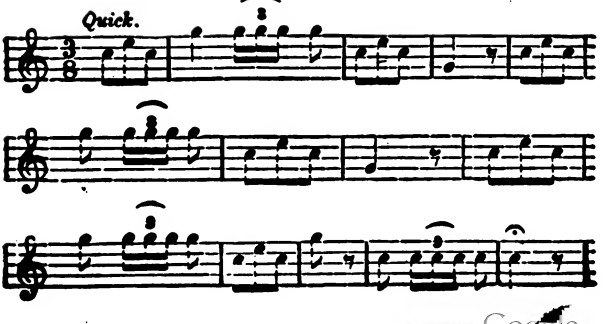
25. OFFICERS' CALL.

26. CAPTAINS' CALL.



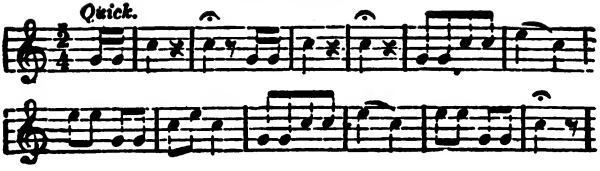
27. FIRST SERGEANTS' CALL

28. FATIGUE.

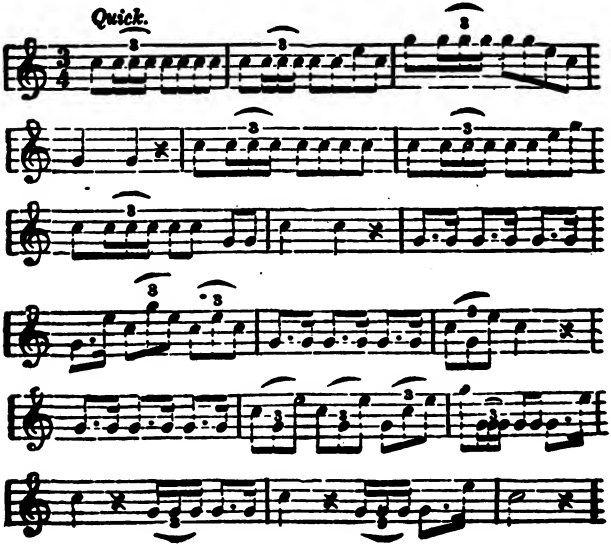


Digitized by Google

29. . SCHOOL.



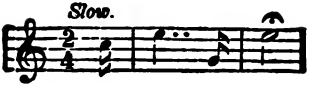
30. THE GENERAL.



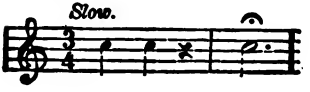
Digitized by Google

DRILL SIGNALS.

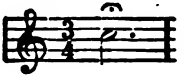
31. ATTENTION.



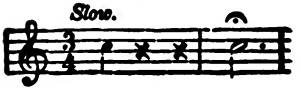
32. FORWARD; OR, FULL STEP. MARCH.



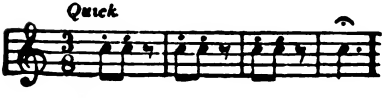
33. HALT.



34. QUICK TIME. MARCH.

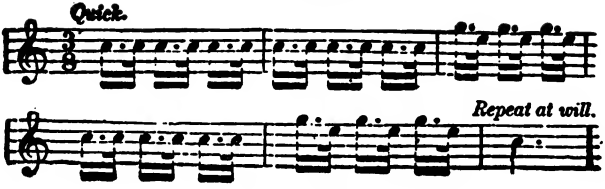


35. DOUBLE TIME. MARCH.

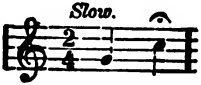


Digitized by Google

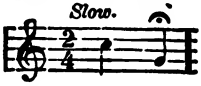
36. CHARGE.



37. GUIDE RIGHT.

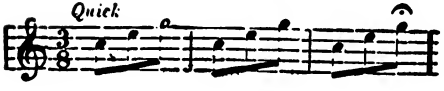


38. CUIDE LEFT.

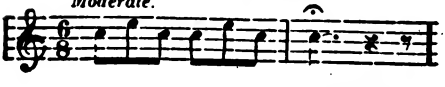


39. GUIDE CENTER.

40. COMPANIES.

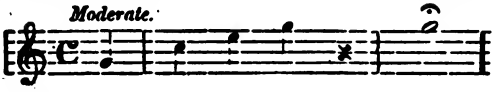


41. BATTALIONS.

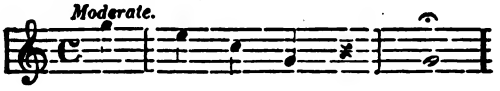


Digitized by Google

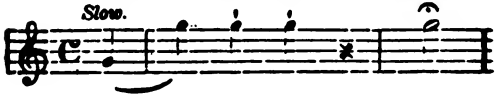
42. SQUADS RIGHT; OR, BY THE RIGHT FLANK. MARCH



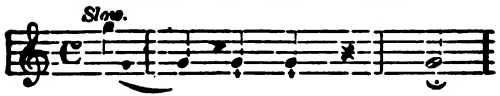
43. SQUADS LEFT, OR, BY THE LEFT FLANK. MARCH.



44. SQUADS RIGHT ABOUT MARCH.

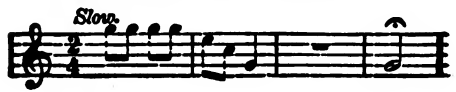


45. SQUADS LEFT ABOUT MARCH.



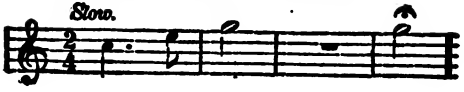
46. COLUMN RIGHT. MARCH.

47. COLUMN LEFT MARCH.

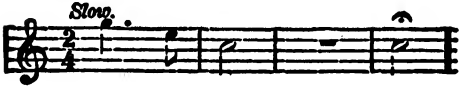


Digitized by Google

48. RIGHT OBLIQUE. MARCH.



49. LEFT OBLIQUE. MARCH.



50. RIGHT FRONT INTO LINE. MARCH.

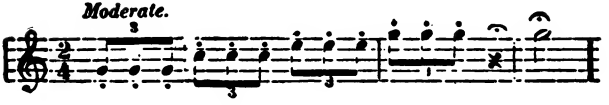
51. LEFT FRONT INTO LINE. MARCH.

52. ON RIGHT INTO LINE. MARCH.

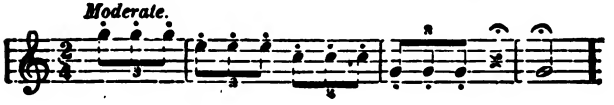
53. ON LEFT INTO LINE. MARCH.

Digitized by Google

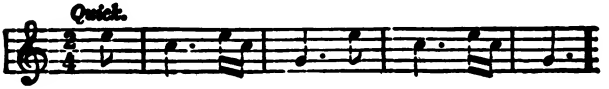
54. COMPANY (OR COMPANIES) RIGHT. MARCH.



55. COMPANY (OR COMPANIES) LEFT. MARCH.



56. COMMENCE FIRING.

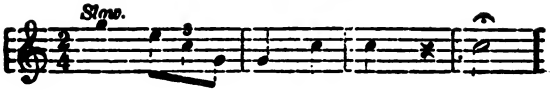


57. CEASE FIRING.

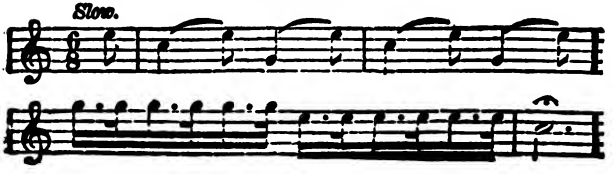
58. AS SKIRMISHERS.

Digitized by Google

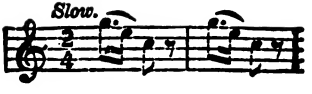
59. TO THE REAR. MARCH.



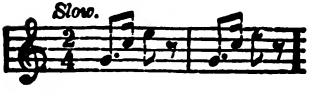
60. RALLY.



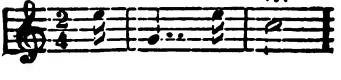
61. LIE DOWN.



62. RISE.



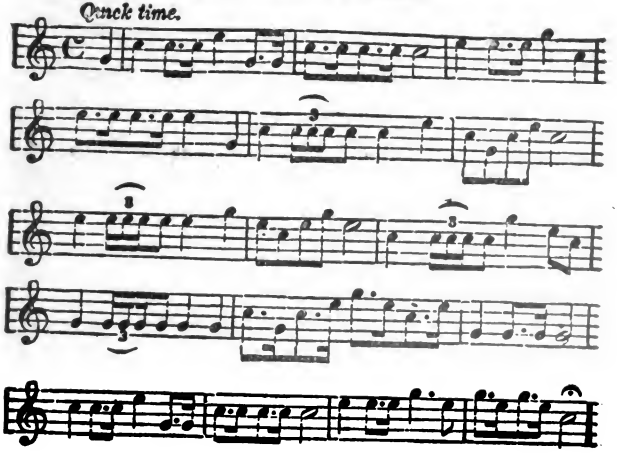
63. ROUTE STEP. MARCH.



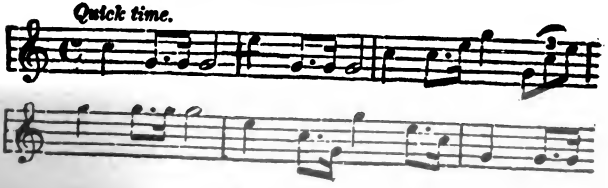
Digitized by Google

MARCHES.

64. PRESIDENT'S MARCH.

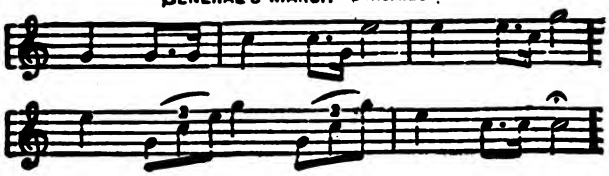


65. GENERAL'S MARCH.

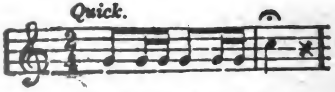


Digitized by Google

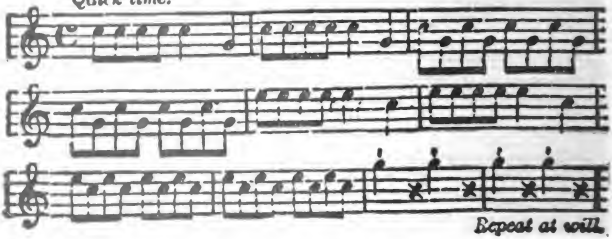
GENERAL'S MARCH—*Concluded.*



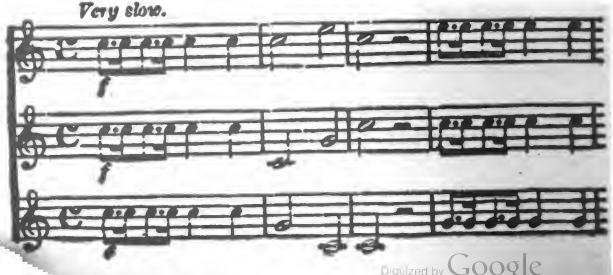
66 FLOURISHES FOR REVIEWS.



67. ROGUE'S MARCH.

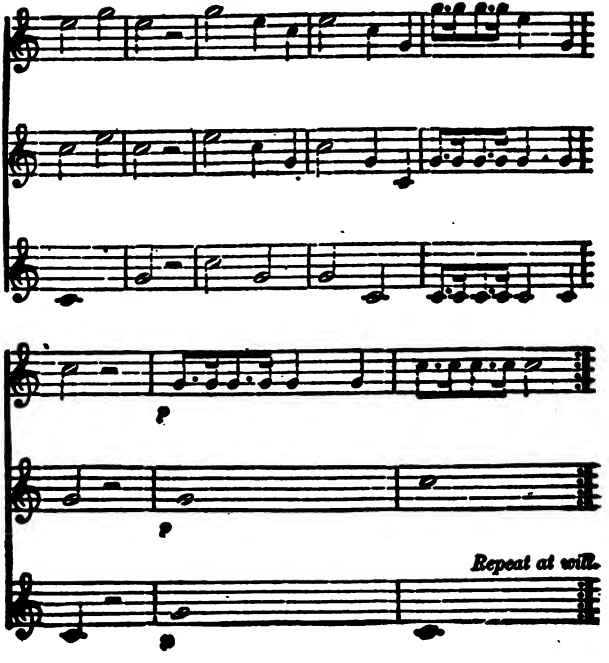


68. FUNERAL MARCH.



Digitized by Google

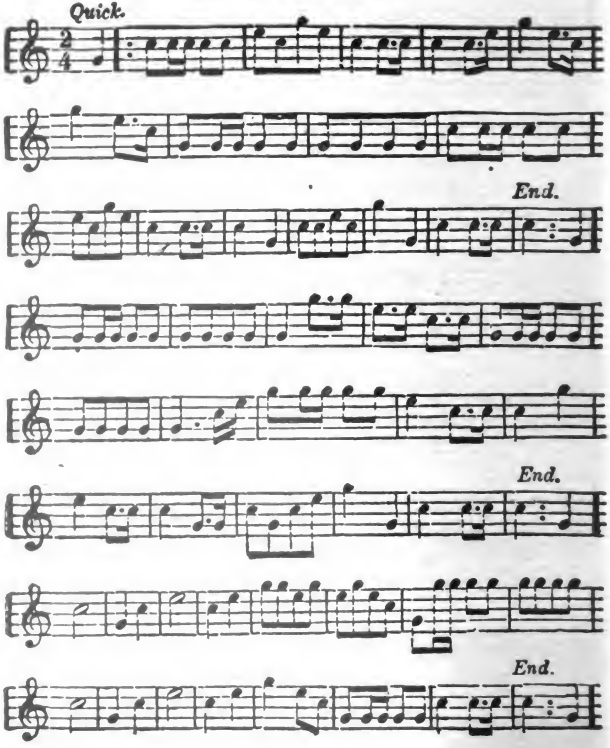
FUNERAL MARCH—*Concluded.*



Digitized by Google

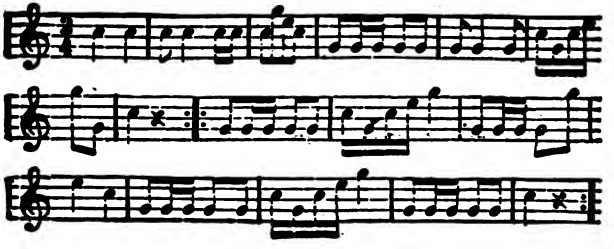
QUICKSTEPS.

69. QUICKSTEP No. 1.

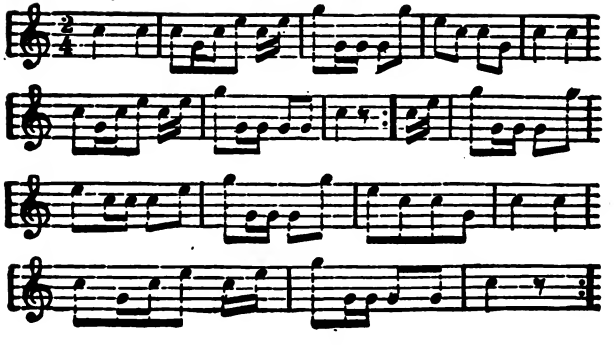


Digitized by Google

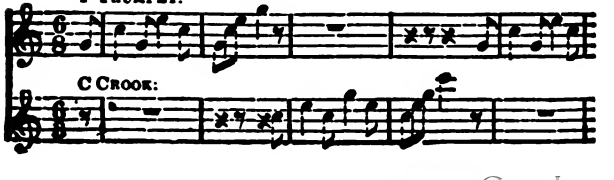
70. QUICKSTEP No 2.



71. QUICKSTEP No. 3.

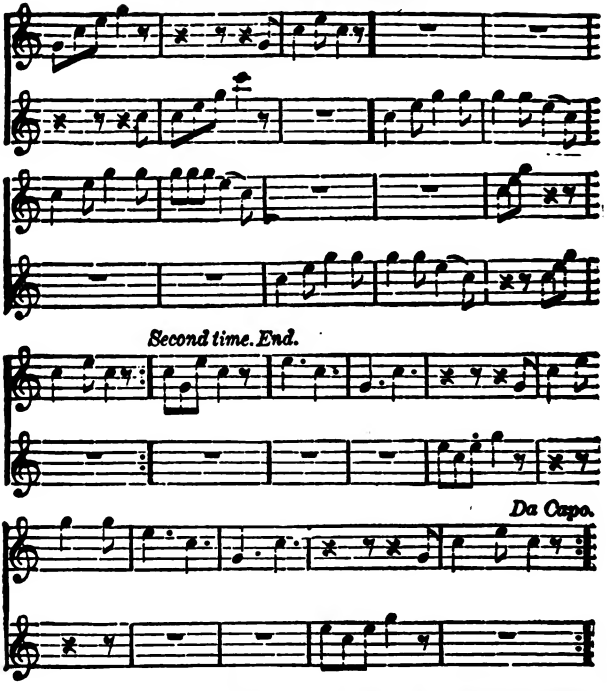


72. QUICKSTEP No. 4.

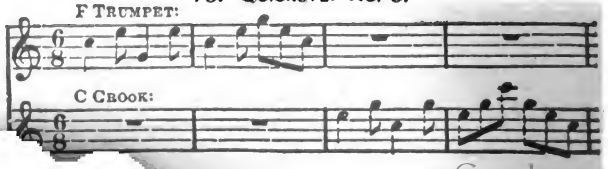


Digitized by Google

QUICKSTEP NO. 4—*Concluded*

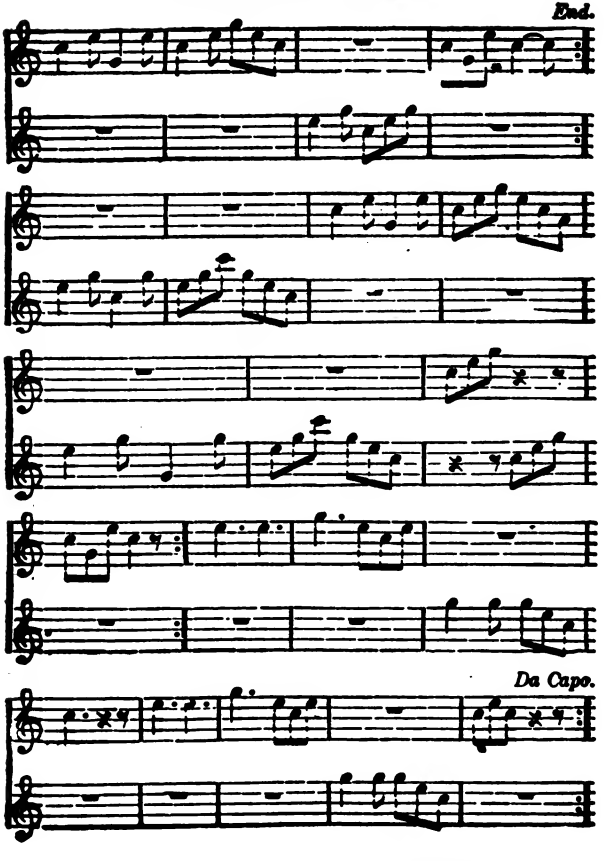


73. QUICKSTEP NO. 5.



Digitized by Google

QUICKSTEP NO. 5—*Concluded.*

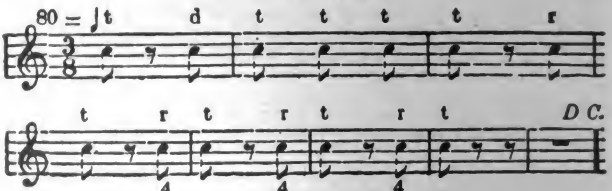


Digitized by Google

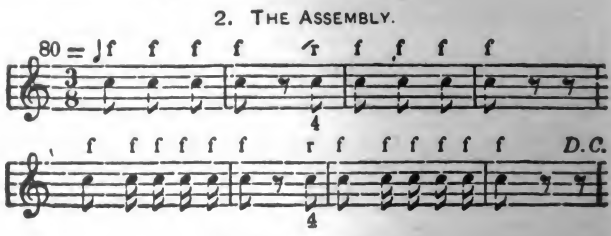
DRUM AND FIFE SIGNALS.

The *assembly*, repeated several times, is the *fire alarm.*
The *long roll* is the signal *to arms.*
t indicates tap; f, flam; d, drag; r, roll. The figures under the rolls indicate the number of strokes in each roll. Continuous roll,

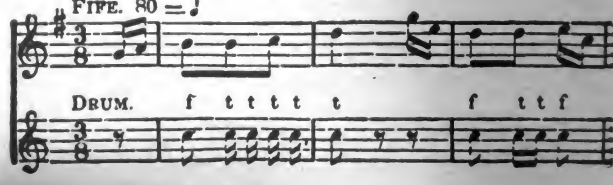
1. THE GENERAL



2. THE ASSEMBLY.

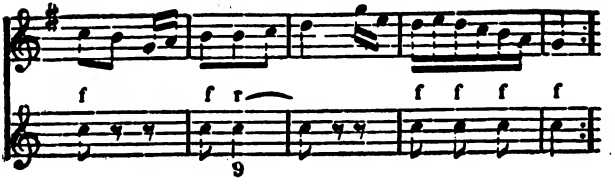


3. TO THE COLOR.

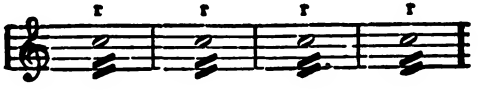


Digitized by Google

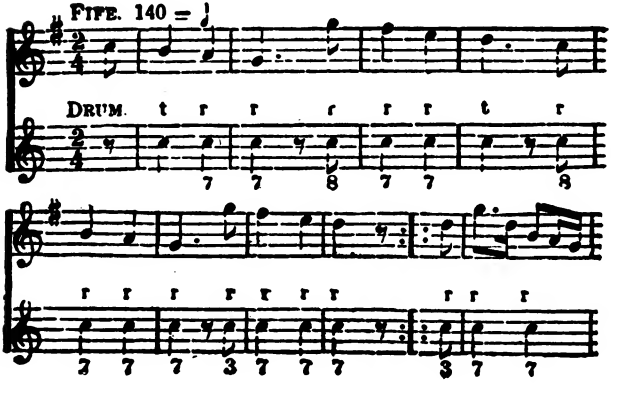
TO THE COLOR—*Concluded.*



4. THE LONG ROLL, OR TO ARMS.

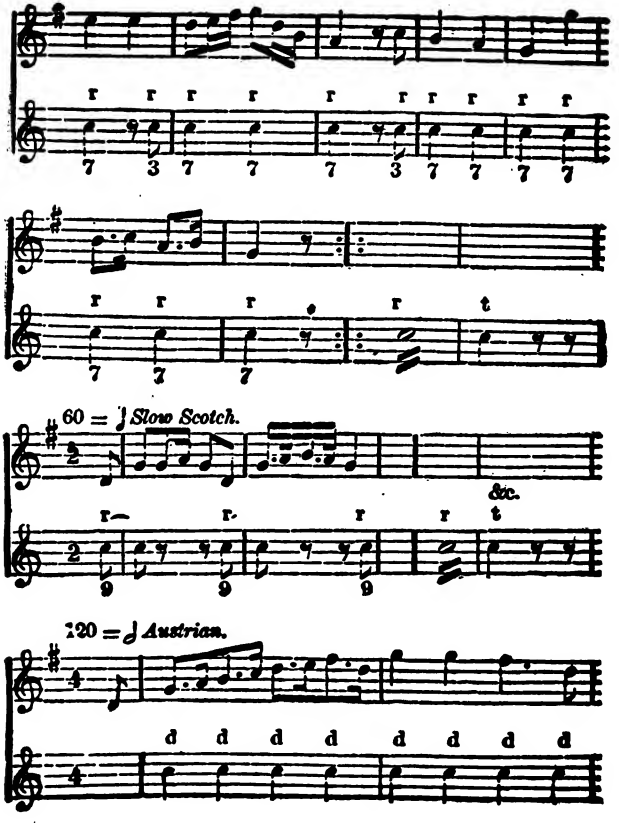


5. REVEILLE.



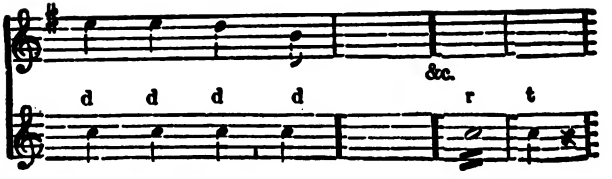
Digitized by Google

REVEILLE—*Continued.*

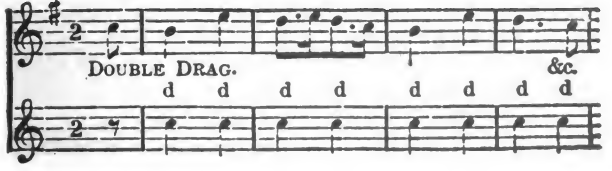


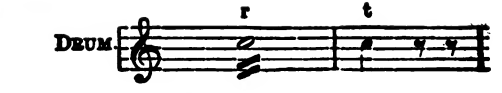
Digitized by Google

REVEILLE—*Continued.*

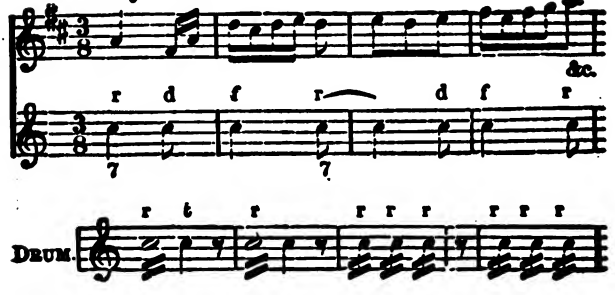


140= ♩ *Hessian.*





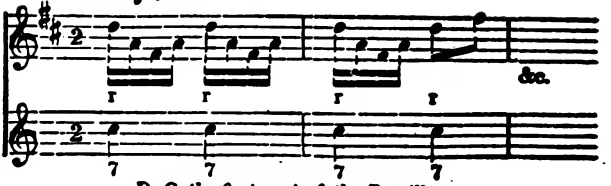
60 = ♩ *Dutch.*



Digitized by Google

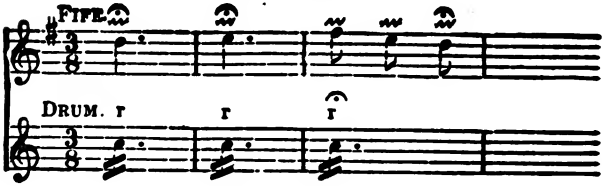
REVEILLE—*Concluded.*

160 = ♩ *Quick Scotch.*

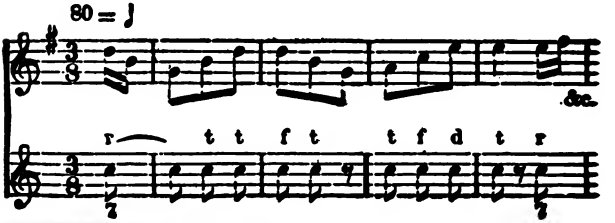


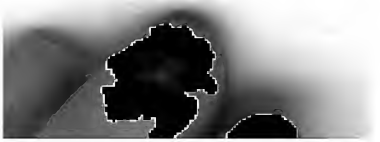
D. C. the first part of the Reveille.

6. TROOP.



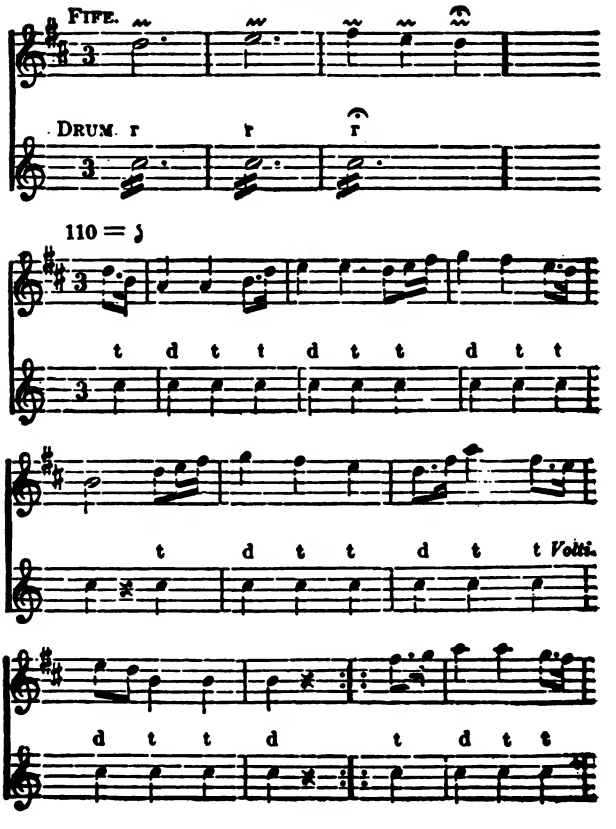
80 = ♩





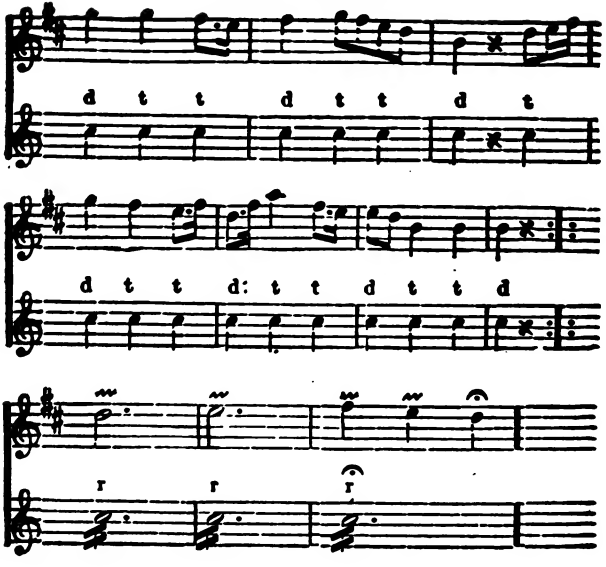
Digitized by Google

7. RETREAT.

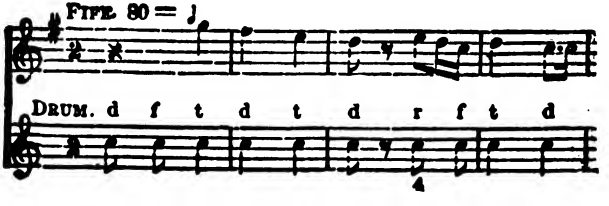


Digitized by Google

RETREAT—*Concluded.*

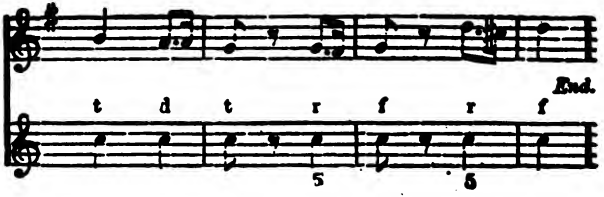


8. TATTOO.

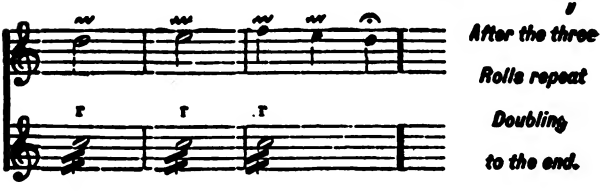


Digitized by Google

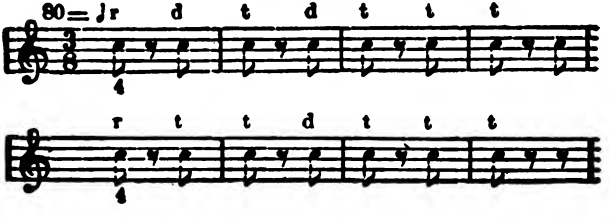
TATTOO—*Concluded.*



Play an Air in *Quick time*—after it, begin the Doubling.
Then an Air in *Common time*—after it, repeat the Doubling.
Then an Air in *Slow time*—and repeat the Doubling.
Finally an Air in *Double time,* followed by three Rolls.

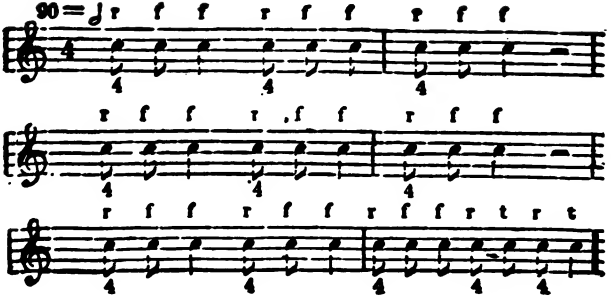


9. RECALL.

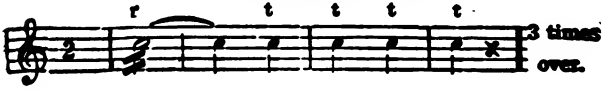


Digitized by Google

10. First Call.



11. First Sergeants' Call.



12. Cease Firing.

Digitized by Google

APPENDIX.

The following modifications of the Revised Infantry Drill Regulations are prescribed for troops armed with the U. S. Magazine Rifle, Model 1898:

54. 1st. To prevent accidents, the magazine and chamber are opened and examined, when details, detachments, and other bodies of troops are first formed, and again just before they are dismissed. In the commands the word *chamber* refers to both magazine and chamber.

* * * * *

3d. The *cut off* is kept turned down except when using the magazine.

4th. The piece is habitually carried with the trigger pulled, and the safety lock turned to the left except during simulated firings and when the piece is loaded or assumed to be loaded, as in extended order.

* * * * *

59. Being at port arms: 1. *Open*, 2. ***CHAMBER***, 3. *Close*, 4. ***CHAMBER.***

At the second command, with the right hand open the magazine gate, turn the bolt handle up and draw the bolt back; glance at the magazine and chamber to see that they are empty.

At the fourth command, push the bolt forward, turn the handle down, close the magazine gate, pull the trigger, and carry the right hand to the small of the stock.

69. Being at order arms: 1. *Fix*, 2. ***BAYONET.***

Execute parade rest; grasp the handle of the bayonet with the right hand back of the hand toward the body. Draw the bayonet from the scabbard and fix it on the barrel, glancing at the muzzle; resume the order, drop the left hand by the side.

74. Being at order arms: 1. *Unfix*, 2. ***BAYONET.***

Take the position of parade rest, grasp the handle of the bayonet firmly with the right hand, press the spring with the forefinger of the left hand, raise the bayonet until the handle is about six inches above the muzzle of the piece, drop the point to the left, back of hand toward the body, and glancing at the scabbard return the bayonet, the blade passing between the left arm and body; regrasp the piece with the right hand and resume the order.

129. At the second command, bayonets are fixed and the cartridge box opened if worn. * * *

Digitized by Google

Each man as the inspector approaches executes *port arms*, and *open chamber*.

The inspector takes the piece, grasping it with his right hand just above the rear sight (the man dropping the hands by the sides), inspects it, and, with the hand and piece in the same position as in receiving it, hands it back to the man, who takes it with the left hand at the balance, executes *close chamber, order arms*, and *unfix bayonet*.

* * * * *

137. Paragraph 137 of the text does not apply to the United States magazine rifle, model 1898. At the command ***CEASE FIRING*** the cartridge is drawn or the empty shell is ejected and the trigger pulled.

138. Being in line at order arms: 1. *Squad*, 2. ***LOAD.***

At the command *load*, each front rank man makes a half face to the right and plants the right foot so that the heel is about six inches to the rear and two inches to the right of the left heel, the feet making with each other an angle of about seventy degrees; each rear rank man moves forward, plants his left toe near the right toe of his file leader, and brings the right foot to its corresponding position as described for the front rank; the men of both ranks raise the piece with the right hand and drop it into the left at the balance, left thumb extending along the stock, muzzle at the height of the breast, and carry the right hand to the small of the stock. (***TWO***) With the right hand turn and draw the bolt back, take a cartridge between the thumb and first two fingers and place it in the receiver; place palm of the hand against the back of the bolt handle and thrust the bolt home with a quick motion, turning down the handle. *This position is designated for reference as that of load* (*standing*).

* * * * *

138a. ***FILL MAGAZINE.***

Take the position of load, if not already there, open the gate of the magazine with the right thumb, take five cartridges from the box or belt, and place them, with the bullets to the front, in the magazine, turning the barrel slightly to the left to facilitate the insertion of the cartridges; close the gate, and carry the right hand to the small of the stock.

140. To continue the firing: 1. ***LOAD,*** 2. ***AIM,*** 3. *Squad*, 4. ***FIRE.***

Each command is executed as previously explained, except that the piece is not locked after loading.

To load from the magazine the command *From magazine* will

Digitized by Google

be given preceding that of ***LOAD;*** the *cut off* will be turned up on coming to the position of *load.*

To resume loading from the belt the command *From belt* will be given preceding the command ***LOAD;*** the *cut off* will be turned down on coming to the position of *load.*

The commands *from magazine* and *from belt,* indicating the change in the manner of loading will not be repeated in subsequent commands.

The words *from belt* apply to cartridge box as well as belt.

In loading from the magazine care should be taken to push the bolt fully forward and turn the handle down before drawing the bolt back, as otherwise the extractor will not catch the cartridge in the chamber, and jamming will occur with the cartridge following.

143. This fire is used only when preparing for or resisting a charge. 1. *Rapid fire,* 2. ***COMMENCE FIRING.***

The bayonets are fixed, the sights are set at point blank, the *cut off* is turned up, and the firing is executed as rapidly as consistent with effective aiming. After the magazine is exhausted the *cut off* is turned down and the firing continued, loading from the belt.

144. ***CEASE FIRING.***

The firing stops; pieces not already there are brought to the position of load, the cartridge is drawn or the empty shell is ejected and the trigger pulled.

Having executed *cease firing:* 1. *Order,* 2. ***ARMS.***

144a. Pieces, loaded and being in the position of load; to execute other movements with the pieces loaded: 1. *Lock,* 2. ***PIECES.***

At the command *pieces* turn the safety lock fully to the right.

145. Being in any position: ***UNLOAD.***

* * * * *

All take the position of load, turn the *cut off* up, if not already there, turn the safety lock to the left, and alternately open and close the chamber until all the cartridges are ejected. After the last cartridge is ejected the chamber is closed and the trigger pulled. The cartridges are then picked up, cleaned, and returned to the box or belt, and the piece brought to the order.

146. The rifle can be used as a magazine rifle by turning the *cut off* up. The use of the rifle as a magazine rifle is, however, to be regarded as exceptional.

FEB 19 1912

Digitized by Google

MILITARY TEXT BOOKS

No Discount on Books.

Infantry Drill Regulations, heavy paper cover.....
Infantry Drill Regulations, cloth cover.....
Cavalry Drill Regulations, leather cover.....
Artillery Drill Regulations, leather cover.....
Manual of Arms, adapted to the Springfield Rifle, calibre 45, and Krag-Joergenson Magazine Rifle, caliber 30.....
Catechismal Edition of the Infantry Drill Regulations, U. S. A., extended order—Maj. W. F. Spurgin—bristol board, 25c; cloth.....
Drill Manual for Non-Commissioned Officers, by Capt. Boardman, cloth, 35c.; bristol board.....
Guard Manual for Non-Commissioned Officers and Privates, by Boardman.....
Manual of Guard Duty, leather, 50c.; paper.....
Drill Regulations for the Hospital Corps of the U. S. A.....
Ammel's Roll Call Book, best in use.....
A Manual of Court Martial—Murray—Morocco.....
A Manual for Aspirants for Commissions in the U. S. Army, by Lieut. Ira L. Reeves, U. S. Army, paper, 50c.; cloth.....
A Catechism of Court Martial Duty, by Major H. B. Spinelli, cloth.....
A Catechism of Outpost Duty—Wagner.....
A Field Message Book for the use of Signalists and Army Officers in the Field—Giddings.....
An Abridgement of Military Law—Lieut. Col. Winthrop.....
Art of Subsisting Armies in War—Sharpe.....
Cadet's Hand Book, by Capt. John A. Lockwood, U. S. A., Retired.....
Califf's Notes on Military Service, with Addenda of the Krag-Joergenson Rifle to date.....
Cavalry Outpost Duties, by F. DeBrack, translated by Maj. Carr, U. S. Army.
Customs of the Service, the Army, National Guards and Volunteers—Powell—cloth.....
Elements of International Law—Geo. B. Davis, U. S. Army.....
Elements of Military Science, adopted by the War Department for Examination of Officers for Promotion, by Col. A. L. Wagner—cloth.....
Exploits of the Signal Corps in the War with Spain—Giddings.....
Firing Regulations for Small Arms.....
First Aid in Illness and Injury—Pilcher—cloth.....
Horses, Saddles and Bridles—Carter.....
Hand-Book for Non-Commissioned Officers by Capt. Stewart, U. S. A.....
Instructions in Military Signaling—Giddings—cloth.....
Instructions in Military Signaling—Gallup—cloth.....
Manual of Physical Drill—Butts.....
Manual for Army Cooks.....
Military Courtesy and Guard Duty, Privates' Hand-book—Lieut. Rowell—paper, 25c.; cloth.....
Organizations and Tactics—Wagner.....
Physical Drill for Foot Troops, illustrated—Capt. Chase.....
Prompt Aid to the Injured—Doty.....
Service of Security and Information—Lieut. Col. A. Wagner—officially adopted as the standard in the examination of officers of the Regular Army for promotion, new edition.....
Troops in Campaign.....
The Soldier's First Aid Hand-book.....
The Army Officer's Examiner; over 4,000 questions and answers prescribed for the examination of officers for promotion, by Col. W. H. Powell, U. S. A.
The Automatic Instructor, by G. W. Read, U. S. A.—cloth.....
The Sentinel's Hand [illegible]—Maj. J. R. McQuigg, O. N. G.....

Digitized by Google

"THE ENLISTED MAN"

A Hand-Book of Useful Information on Things Military

GOVERNING THE NATIONAL GUARD

Compiled by
MAJ. FRED. S. MARQUIS

NEW REVISED EDITION, giving the essential changes in the Uniform and Equipment of interest to the ENLISTED MAN, provided for in General Orders No. 81, H. Q. U. S. Army, July 17, 1902.

Heavy Paper Cover, 60 Pages } **Postpaid**
Good print on best book paper } **15c. each**

100 Copies, $12.50

THE M. C. LILLEY & CO.,

COLUMBUS, OHIO

"A good book at a small price, but big value and business-like." A copy should be the property of every National Guardsman, at state expense, for the good of the service.

LT. COL. LYNN R. TELLER,
Co. A, 2nd Inf., Mich. N. G.

Please forward 1,200 copies of "**Enlisted Man,**" and charge to State of So. Dak.

GEN'L J. S. CONKLIN.

Ship and charge to State of W. Va., 150 copies of "**Enlisted Man.**"

A. B. HUSTON, Ass't Adjt. Gen.

"**Enlisted Man**" received. A great big thing in a little bit of a book.

C. ROBERT CHURCHILL,
LT. Comdg., 1st Troop, La. S. N. G

NEW REGULATION
UNIFORMS AND EQUIPMENTS
FOR ENLISTED MEN

CAPS,
CHEVRONS,
STRIPES,
HAT-CORDS,
BUTTONS,
ETC.,

SERVICE
HATS,
LEGGINGS,
SHIRTS,
CAP AND
COLLAR
DEVICES.

Write and ask us for **Prices**
on Goods Desired

E. M. C. LILLEY & CO., Columbus, O

Manufacturers of Uniforms and Equipments
of Every Description.

Digitized by Google